

History of Sciences in India Publications

CARAKA SAMHITĀ

(A Scientific Synopsis)

By

PRIYADARANJAN RÂY, M.A., F.N.I.

and

HIRENDRA NATH GUPTA, M.SC.



NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF SCIENCES OF INDIA
NEW DELHI

Published by

THE NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF SCIENCES OF INDIA
BAHADUR SHAH ZAFAR MARG, NEW DELHI 1.

COPY © RIGHT

1965

NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF SCIENCES OF INDIA

PRINTED IN INDIA
SREE SARASWATY PRESS, CALCUTTA-9

FOREWORD

The present monograph of *Caraka Saṃhitā* is the first of a series of studies being published by the National Institute of Sciences of India which in 1959 constituted a Board for the compilation of a History of Sciences in India. Several bibliographies and monographs are now ready and their publication will be taken up as and when funds become available.

The work of the Board has now been taken over by the National Commission for the History of Sciences in India, inaugurated on January 15, 1965, by Shri M. C. Chagla, the Union Minister of Education.

This monograph offers a scientifically classified account of the contents of *Caraka Saṃhitā*, one of the two earliest and most renowned medical treatises of ancient India. Of these two treatises, *Caraka Saṃhitā* and *Suśruta Saṃhitā*, dealing respectively with medicine and surgery in the main, *Caraka* is admittedly the more ancient, though both have passed through repeated recensions by later and more advanced workers. The significance of these treatises lies in the rational basis of their concepts and discourse, and in their adoption of scientific terminology.

No definite date, acceptable to all, could however be assigned as to the composition of *Caraka Saṃhitā*, though its antiquity is not generally challenged. The extant *Caraka* is a redaction by Dṛḍhabala of the genuine *Caraka Saṃhitā*, which was itself a redaction by Caraka of the original work of Agniveśa, a disciple of Ātreya Punarvasu—a teacher in the University of Taxila during the age of Buddha. Caraka has been identified by some scholars with a physician of the same name in the court of the Indo-Scythian king Kaniska, who reigned in the second century A.D. From a consideration of internal and external evidence many authorities are of opinion that *Caraka Saṃhitā* is more or less a record or compilation of the deliberations of a congress of medical experts in ancient India, held in the early Buddhistic era. Hence, the progress of scientific knowledge in ancient India, as recorded in the medical treatise of Caraka, the most celebrated of the early Indian authors on the subject, may be compared with that of contemporary Greece, as represented by the works of Hippocrates. It has, therefore, been assumed by some western scholars that the medical knowledge, as expounded by Caraka, betrays some acquaintance with the works of that Greek author, though they have failed to advance any convincing proof.

This synoptic survey is well documented and its authors have taken good care of avoiding all attempts at improving upon Caraka's concepts and views in order to give them an air of modernity, which often unfortunately occurs in the case of many modern publications on ancient texts. This will help ensuring a proper assessment of the standard of scientific knowledge prevailing in India during the time of Caraka. The work will, therefore, serve as a record of reliable source materials for the compilation of a history of Indian medicine. A similar survey of the contents of *Suśruta Saṃhitā* is now in progress. Students of medicine and pharmacology, particularly those interested in research, will find the publication quite useful. Moreover, it will contribute in no small measure towards the preparation of scientific terminology in Indian languages, so urgently needed at the present moment.

The Convener desires to express on behalf of the retiring Board its appreciation of the meticulous care and scholarship with which Prof. P. Rây, with the assistance of Shri Hirendra Nath Gupta, has carried out the task. The monograph will be welcomed by a wide circle of interested readers.

I do confidently hope that the book will not fail to achieve the purpose it has in view.

February 4, 1965

D. M. BOSE
Convener

PREFACE

In the present work a synoptic survey of the *Caraka Saṃhitā*, a well-known medical treatise of ancient India, has been made. The concepts, processes, methods, and materials, which occur in the treatise in a scattered manner, interspersed with an abundance of metaphysical disquisitions and with frequent reference to Vedic gods and hymns, have been co-ordinated and systematized from a scientific point of view. Most of the materials have been arranged in tabular forms for ready reference and rapid survey. Wherever necessary, and as far as possible, both English and Latin equivalents of all Sanskrit names and terms have been supplied to avoid ambiguities in their identification.

This is possibly the first attempt at rendering in English on a scientific basis the salient features of the views and observations of Caraka in a classified manner in order to make them accessible to all those English-speaking scholars, who may not have time and opportunities to go through the original Sanskrit text, or its English translations that are available. We would like to acknowledge here the valuable help we have received from these translations.

A proper assessment of the standard of scientific knowledge, particularly of medical science, acquired by the ancient Indians at a time prior to Galen, if not even much earlier as upheld by some scholars, is thus likely to be facilitated. Students of medicine and pharmacology, interested in research work, are also expected to find this publication particularly useful for their purpose.

In preparing this synopsis we have made use of the following editions of the text, and have consulted the available commentaries and translations.

1. *Jalpakaḷpataru*, the complete text of *Caraka Saṃhitā*, edited by Kaviraja Gangadhara with commentary; Vols. I-III. Second Edition; Calcutta, 1880-81.
2. *Caraka Saṃhitā*, complete text with Cakrapāṇi's commentary; edited by Harinātha Viśārada, Calcutta, 1892.
3. *Caraka Saṃhitā*, edited by Shree Gulabkunverba Ayurvedic Society, with introduction, commentary and indices including English, Hindi and Gujarati translations; Vols. I-VI. Jamnagar, 1949.
4. *Caraka Saṃhitā* (*Agniveśa Saṃhitā* as revised by Caraka and Dṛḍhabala), with *Āyurveda Dīpikā*, the commentary of Cakrapāṇi Datta; edited by Vaidya Jādavaji Trikamji Āchārya; third edition. Nirnaya Sagar Press, Bombay, 1941.

References in the present work to the chapters and verses in the original text follow the numberings given in the two last named publications.

For botanical and zoological names the following authoritative works served as the principal source of our information:

1. *Flora of British India* by J. B. Hooker, Vols. I-VII. London, 1872-1897.
2. *Pharmacographica Indica* by W. Dymock *et al.*, Vols. I-IV. London, Bombay, and Calcutta, 1893.
3. *Indian Medicinal Plants* by R. N. Chopra, Patna, 1932.
4. *The Fauna of British India* (including Ceylon, and Burma). Taylor and Francis; London, 1949.
5. *Sanskrit-English Dictionary* by M. Monier-Williams. Oxford, 1951.

In spite of all our precautions, we are quite conscious of the possibility of mistakes and errors, still occurring in this synopsis, and we shall be thankful to our readers for bringing them to our notice, if they happen to find any.

The following abbreviations have been used:

Sū.—*Sūtrasthāna*, *Ni.*—*Nidānasthāna*, *Vi.*—*Vimānasthāna*, *Śā.*—*Śārīrasthāna*,
In.—*Indriyasthāna*, *Ci.*—*Cikitsāsthāna*, *Ka.*—*Kalpasthāna*, *Si.*—*Siddhisthāna*.

We take this opportunity of expressing our grateful thanks to Pandit N. C. Vedantatirtha of the Asiatic Society for his kindly going through the final proof and verifying the Sanskrit names and terms. Our thanks are also due to Mrs. S. Mitra, Sub-editor, National Institute of Sciences of India, for her ungrudging assistance in reading the proofs and in seeing the work through the press. We must also express our great appreciation for all facilities we have received from the authorities of the Asiatic Society for working in their library. Finally, we wish to acknowledge our thankfulness to Dr. D. M. Bose, Convener, for his keen interest in the work, carried out under the auspices of the National Institute of Sciences of India. Above all, we consider it our bounden duty to offer our grateful thanks to Dr. A. C. Ukil who, as the President of the N.I.S.I., took the main initiative in organizing the scheme for compiling a History of Sciences in India and, as the first convener of its Board, evinced a great interest in our work with all possible encouragement and help.

We would also like to record here our appreciation of the patient co-operation of Sree Saraswaty Press Ltd., Calcutta, in bringing out this publication.

P. RÂV
H. N. GUPTA

CONTENTS

| | PAGE |
|--|-------|
| FOREWORD | iii |
| PREFACE | v |
| I. AUTHORSHIP AND DATE OF COMPOSITION .. | 1 |
| II. SCOPE AND SUB-DIVISIONS OF THE TREATISE .. | 4 |
| III. CONCEPTS AND THEORIES | 5—13 |
| (a) Man and Matter; Aim of Medical Science .. | 5 |
| (b) Conception and Birth | 7 |
| (c) Heredity and Embryonic Growth | 8 |
| (d) Humoral Theory (Concept of the Origin of Diseases) .. | 10 |
| (e) <i>Vāyu</i> and its Role in Human System and in Nature .. | 12 |
| (f) Memory and Dream | 12 |
| (g) Ethics in Caraka | 12 |
| IV. PHYSIOLOGICAL PROCESSES | 13—16 |
| (a) Digestion and Metabolism | 13 |
| (b) Movement of Fluids through Channels of the Human Body | 14 |
| (c) Tastes | 15 |
| V. HEALTH AND LONGEVITY | 16—20 |
| (a) Personal Hygiene | 16 |
| (b) Effects of Environment on Health | 17 |
| (c) Nutrition and Diet | 18 |
| (d) Rejuvenation | 19 |
| (e) Public Sanitation | 20 |
| VI. PHYSICIANS IN CARAKA | 20 |
| VII. DIAGNOSIS OF DISEASES | 21 |
| VIII. METHODS OF TREATMENT, INCLUDING SURGERY | 23 |

| | |
|---|--------|
| IX. POISONS | 24 |
| X. PHYSICOCHEMICAL PROCESSES | 25 |
| XI. CLASSIFICATIONS | 26 |
| XII. TABLES (1—20) | 30—119 |
| 1. Living Creatures | 30 |
| 2. Medicinal Substances of Animal Origin and their Uses .. | 38 |
| 3. Medicinal Plants and Plant Products, and their Uses .. | 52 |
| 4. Medicinal Substances of Mineral Origin and their Uses .. | 78 |
| 5. Cereals and Legumes | 86 |
| 6. Natural Waters | 86 |
| 7. Sugarcane Derivatives and Types of Honey | 87 |
| 8. Milk and Milk-products | 88 |
| 9. Vegetable Oils | 89 |
| 10. Alcoholic Beverages | 90 |
| 11. Anatomical Terms | 91 |
| (A) General | 91 |
| (B) Bones in the Human Body | 95 |
| 12. Physiological Terms | 97 |
| 13. Diseases | 99 |
| 14. Pathological Conditions and Congenital Defects | 108 |
| 15. Therapeutical, Surgical, and Chemical Terms | 112 |
| 16. Apparatus and Appliances | 114 |
| 17. Terms for Physicochemical Processes | 115 |
| 18. Mechanical and Physical Terms | 117 |
| 19. Weights and Measures | 118 |
| 20. Terms for Physical Properties | 119 |
| XIII. BIBLIOGRAPHY | 120 |

I. AUTHORSHIP AND DATE OF COMPOSITION

The *Caraka Saṃhitā* (literally, treatise compiled by Caraka) is a Sanskrit work of great antiquity. Though primarily a compendium on “Āyurveda” (science of life), the philosophical concepts and views that form a considerable part of the *Caraka Saṃhitā*, serving, as it were, as the background of knowledge and practice of medicine in ancient India, must be considered an integral part of the work.

It is difficult, if not altogether impossible, to fix an exact date for its composition, or even to identify its author with any certainty. The only text available at present is a redaction by Dṛḍhabala of the 9th century A.D., who repeatedly mentioned in the body of the text that he merely edited an ancient work of this name, restoring and reconstructing some missing passages. In fact, a major portion of the last book of the *Saṃhitā*, ‘Siddhisthāna’, was added by him.

The text gives a detailed account of how the *Caraka Saṃhitā* was originally composed. A conference of sages, meeting somewhere in the Himalayas, with the common object of alleviating human suffering and assuring a long, healthy and satisfying life to all, decided to take all steps to acquire the necessary knowledge for that purpose (*Sū. Chap. 1*). Later, one of these sages, Ātreya Punarvasu by name, requested six of his disciples to compile his teachings in writing (*Sū. Chap. 2*). The treatise of Agniveśa was considered the best, and the *Saṃhitā* of Agniveśa, revised by Caraka at some later date, formed the basis of Dṛḍhabala’s edition. In fact, the major portion of *Caraka Saṃhitā* is presented in the form of questions and answers between the disciple Agniveśa and his teacher Ātreya.

There is no reason why this account, as far as the sequence of authorship is concerned, should not be accepted as correct. Cakrapāṇi Datta (11th century) in his commentary *Āyurvedadīpikā* on *Caraka Saṃhitā* practically asserted the identity of the latter with the original *Agniveśa Saṃhitā*, of which he seemed to have a full knowledge.

A great deal of difficulty is however encountered, when we try to identify Ātreya, Agniveśa, and Caraka with authors of the same names mentioned in Brāhmanical, Buddhistic, Chinese and Arabic literatures. Some of these names are found to occur as early as the Vedic period (2nd millennium B.C.) and some as late as the early centuries of the Christian era. It had been a common practice in India, for scholars of lesser fame to assume the titles of their more renowned predecessors in their particular fields with a view to fixing a stamp of authority on their own works. This fact introduces an element of uncertainty in any tentative chronology.

Most of the hymns of the fifth Maṇḍala of the *R̥gveda* are attributed to Atri, or to Ātreya. Again, Ātreya is the name of a famous medical teacher at Taxila, who, according to many Buddhistic and Chinese texts, was the preceptor of Jīvaka, the personal physician of Gautama Buddha (6th century B.C.). But the Ātreya of *Caraka Saṁhitā* is Ātreya Punarvasu, son of Candrabhāga (*Sū.* 13, 99), whereas no Vedic text, Buddhistic source or Chinese work even mentions the title Punarvasu, or the parentage. The *Caraka Saṁhitā* itself makes a mention of yet another Ātreya (*Sū.* 1, 9). Nowhere does it mention Taxila as Ātreya's place of residence. On the contrary, Punarvasu Ātreya is described as taking a walk in Kāmpilya, a city on the river Ganges (*Vi.* 3, 3). Though the possibility of an excursion, or of migration, cannot be ruled out, there is nothing to support his identity with the teacher of Jīvaka, except the surname Ātreya, which is derived from the name Atri and means a descendant or follower of Atri. The identification of the author of *Caraka Saṁhitā* with the teacher at Taxila, made by Rudolf Hoernle (*Bower Manuscript*, Introduction, p. lviii), is not based therefore on any convincing evidence.

As for Agniveśa, the *Mahābhārata* refers to one Agniveśa as receiving the knowledge of *dhanurvedyā* (science of archery) from Bharadvāja (Ādiparva, slokas 5107 and 5108), whereas in the *Caraka Saṁhitā* Agniveśa is merely a disciple of Ātreya, who in his turn received his knowledge of Āyurveda also from one Bharadvāja (*Sū.* Chap. 1). Here again an identification would be hazardous.

The Chinese text of *Tripitaka* names one Tche lo kia (i.e., Caraka in Sanskrit) as a trusted physician in the court of the king Kaṇṣka (c. 200 A.D.) in the north-west of India. This Caraka has been identified by Sylvain Lévi (Notes sur les Indo-Scythes in *J.A.* 1896, pp. 451-480) and by Hoernle (*Studies in the Medicine of Ancient India*. Part I, p. 9) with the author of the *Caraka Saṁhitā*. Here again, the identification is far from convincing; for, the name and title of Caraka (literally, a wanderer) has been found in many places and contexts in ancient Indian literature and is, in fact, associated with a particular school of medical knowledge. Reference to this is found in the *Black Yajurveda* (L. Renou, *Écoles Védique*, p. 129, 144, etc.). The *Taittirīya Saṁhitā*, known to be a work dating from more than a thousand years before the Christian era, also speaks about the Caraka School of medicine, though not in complimentary terms (*Taittirīya Saṁhitā*, VI, 4, 9). It is more than possible that all subsequent Carakas, including the court-physician of Kaṇṣka, were later exponents of this medical school, and centuries might have elapsed between any two holders of this name or title.

From passages in Cakrapāṇi Datta's *Āyurvedadīpikā* and in Śivadāsa Sena's commentary on the latter work (12th century A.D.), it appears that Patañjali, the famous grammarian (c. 2nd century B.C.) and a great alchemist, also revised *Caraka Saṁhitā*. If these are to be believed, Caraka cannot by any

stretch of imagination be placed in the court of Kaṇiṣka three or four centuries later.

It is therefore extremely difficult to give any definite date when Ātreya, Agniveśa or Caraka of our text might have flourished.

P. C. Rây (*History of Hindu Chemistry*, Vol. I, Introduction, pp. xiii—xxiii) after considering all internal and relevant evidence places the date of composition of *Caraka Saṃhitā* in the pre-Buddhistic period, i.e., before 600 B.C. His arguments are summarized below.

1. The text of Caraka is written in a haphazard and unsystematic style, intermingled with metaphysical disquisitions in sharp contrast with the precise style of works composed in the Buddhistic and later periods.

2. Vedic gods and *mantras* occur repeatedly, but references to Paurāṇic mythology and Buddhistic scriptures are conspicuous by their absence.

3. Caraka follows Vedic texts in counting the number of bones (360) in the human body, and in assuming the age of thirty as the limit of man's youth.

4. The prose style of Caraka resembles that of the Brāhmaṇas of the Vedas.

5. The treatise appears to be a record of the deliberations of Vedic ṛṣis, often giving their discussions in full (vide discourse on tastes, *Sū.* Chap. 26) and clearly mentions that it was composed shortly after those deliberations.

6. Patañjali (2nd century B.C.) is known to have made a redaction of the *Caraka Saṃhitā*.

Jean Filliozat (*La Doctrine classique de la Médecine Indienne*, pp. 17-19) also believes that significant references found in the text, the stage of development of the language employed, and careful comparison with other works of established dates, can give a more reliable idea of the date of composition than the names and dates of supposed authors. He, however, considers the style and composition definitely post-Vedic and having considerable affinity with the *Arthaśāstra* of Kauṭilya (3rd century B.C.). According to him, the *Caraka Saṃhitā* was composed in a period which antedates the Christian era, but not by a very long period. He gives the 2nd or 1st century B.C. as the most probable date.

Some workers (Filliozat, *loc. cit.*, and Gananath Sen, *Pratyakṣa Śārīram* Vol. I, 8-11) have identified Caraka with Patañjali, but the evidence in support of this view is not very convincing.

Winternitz (*History of Indian Literature*, part I) assigns 100 A.D. as the approximate date of *Caraka Saṃhitā*, and the Chronology Committee of the National Institute of Sciences of India (*Proceedings*, 1952) after considering all available evidence adopted this date for the text, which formed the basis of Dṛḍhabala's redaction.

II. SCOPE AND SUB-DIVISIONS OF THE TREATISE

Caraka Samhitā is primarily an exposition of Āyurveda, the science of life, defined as the science of the causes and symptoms of diseases, of their medication, and of the maintenance of health (*Sū. 1, 23*). It also deals with the origin of medical science, the fundamental causes of conception and birth, and of physical deformities. According to Caraka, life is everlasting and without any beginning. Āyurveda, the science of life, has also been always in existence (*Sū. 30, 27*).

The treatise contains a detailed classification and nomenclature of diseases—their etiology, diagnosis, prognosis and treatment. Embryology, obstetrics, anatomy, physiology, personal hygiene, sanitation, training and duties of physicians, and other theoretical and practical aspects of medicine are also treated in some detail. Interspersed in the text are passages which give valuable indications of the cosmological, biological, physicochemical, metaphysical, ethical and philosophical ideas prevalent in India at the time.

According to Caraka, Āyurveda has got eight branches (*Sū. 30, 30*) :

- (1) *Kāyacikitsā*, therapeutics.
- (2) *Śalākya*, the science of the special diseases of the eye, ear, nose, mouth, throat, etc.
- (3) *Śalyāpahartṛka*, surgery.
- (4) *Viṣagaravairodhikaprāśamana*, toxicology.
- (5) *Bhūtavidyā*, psychiatric knowledge.
- (6) *Kaumārabhṛtya*, pediatrics.
- (7) *Rasāyana*, rejuvenation.
- (8) *Vājikarāṇa*, knowledge for increasing virility.

The *Caraka Samhitā* is an exhaustive compendium on therapeutic medicine and claims to contain all that is to be known in this branch (*Si. 12, 53*), though it contains sections devoted to the other seven branches.

The scope of the treatise is stated to be limited to ten specific topics (*Sū. 30, 32*):

- (i) *Śarīra*, anatomy.
- (ii) *Vṛtti*, physiology.
- (iii) *Hetu*, etiology.
- (iv) *Vyādhi*, pathology.
- (v) *Karma*, treatment.
- (vi) *Kārya*, objectives.
- (vii) *Kāla*, the influence of age and seasons.
- (viii) *Karṭṛ*, physicians.
- (ix) *Karāṇa*, medicines and appliances.
- (x) *Vidhiviniścaya*, procedure and sequence.

For a discussion of the above topics the treatise is divided into eight sections (*Sū. 30, 35*):

- (1) *Sūtrasthāna* deals with general principles, philosophy, etc.
- (2) *Nidānasthāna* deals with causes of diseases.
- (3) *Vimānasthāna* deals with taste, nourishment, general pathology, etc.
- (4) *Śārīrasthāna* deals with anatomy and embryology.
- (5) *Indriyasthāna* deals with diagnosis and prognosis.
- (6) *Cikitsāsthāna* deals with treatment of diseases.
- (7) *Kalpasthāna* deals with pharmacy.
- (8) *Siddhisthāna* deals with cure of diseases.

In all, there are one hundred and fifty chapters on specific topics. There are at places some later revisions or interpolations, as repeatedly admitted by the redactor at the end of each and every chapter. In fact, Dṛḍhabala states that he had to rewrite and complete the last section *Siddhisthāna* from the materials available to him (*Śi. 12, 55*). The twelfth or last chapter of this section was not available at all and had to be restored by him in order to complete the treatise (*Śi. 12, last śloka*).

III. CONCEPTS AND THEORIES

(a) MAN AND MATTER : AIM OF MEDICAL SCIENCE

Man, according to Caraka, is an epitome of the macrocosm (*Śā. 5, 3*). Following the philosophical doctrines of Sāṃkhya and Vedānta, Caraka holds (*Śā. Chap. 5*) that the individual is a replica of the universal; both the external world and the individual man are the manifestations of one and the same eternal spirit (*Brahman*). In other words, spirit and matter are not two separate entities but one integral whole. Both man and the visible world are composed of six elements. *Prthvī* (earth), *ap* (water or liquid), *tejas* (fire), *vāyu* (air) and *ākāśa* (ether) are common to both. The sixth element, the spirit or self in the individual, is equivalent to *Brahman* in the universe (*Śā. 5, 4*). *Prthvī* confers hardness, *ap* confers fluid constituents, *tejas* the body-heat, *vāyu* the vital breath, *ākāśa* the bodily orifices, and *Brahman* the spirit (*Śā. 5, 5*). Similar to the office of the creator in the universe is the might of the individual soul in man. He also creates life by the act of impregnation (*Śā. 5, 6*). Like the diverse things present in the universe, the different entities comprising the human being are too numerous to count (*Śā. 5, 4*). There is in man as much diversity as in the world outside (*Śā. 5, 3*).

The human body is made up of innumerable minute parts which, because of their extreme fineness, are invisible and not amenable to sense perception. These may be compared to the cells of the body, as we now understand (*Śā. 7, 17*).

According to Caraka there are four criteria of truth: (a) authoritative

testimony, (b) direct observation, (c) logical assumption, (d) inference. Anything contrary to reason is to be rejected as untruth, (Sū. 11, 17, 26-28). To this might also be added (e) tradition and (f) analogy (Vi. 8, 33).

The realization of truth or perfect knowledge by *ñān* arises from the sense of equality, i.e., from the perception of his own self as identified with everything else in the universe (Śā. 5, 7), or from the perception of the unity of the whole world (Śā. 5, 8). The purpose of life is the attainment of liberation, or emancipation of the soul, which consists in the understanding and realization of truth, leading to eternal peace. This cannot be achieved merely by rituals, ceremonial practices, keeping up the sacred fire, invocations, mendicancy, austerities, asceticism, etc. (Śā. 5, 10).

A sound mind and a sound body were regarded as prerequisites for the beatific experience of the Divine or *Brahman* in man. The aim and object of the study and pursuit of medical science with this end in view was thus defined in the *Caraka Saṁhitā* (Śā. 5, 10). For, it serves as an aid to the fulfilment of fourfold purposes of life, namely, *dharma* (performance of duties), *artha* (acquisition of wealth), *kāma* (satisfaction of desires), and *mokṣa* (salvation or self-realization) (Sū. 1, 15-16).

Life, according to Caraka, can be divided into four types: *sukhamāyuh* (happy life) is a life not affected by physical or mental diseases; *asukhamāyuh* (unhappy life) is the opposite of this; *hitamāyuh* (good life) is a virtuous life devoted to the service and welfare of others; *ahitamāyuh* (bad life) is the opposite of this. The object of the science of life is to provide information about what tends to develop all these four kinds of life and to determine their span (Sū. 30, 23-24).

All matter is composed of the five *mahābhūtas* (gross elements): *ākāśa* (vacuum or ether), *vāyu* (gas or air), *tejas* (radiant energy), *ap* (liquid or water) and *pṛthvī* (solid or earth substance) (Śā. 1, 27). The gross *bhūtas* show five subtle characteristics: non-resistance, motion, heat, fluidity and hardness. *Ākāśa* has the sole quality of non-resistance. In each succeeding element there is found the preceding element or elements with their characteristic properties, as well as its own specific quality (Śā. 1, 27-29).

Living things are composed of the *mahābhūtas* and three other constituents: *avyakta* (*ātman* or unmanifest self), *buddhi* (intelligence) and *ahaṁkāra* (ego). Thus they have the eight-fold *prakṛti* (natural characteristics) (Śā. 1, 63). The ego is made up of action, the consequences of action, reincarnation and memory, and is independent of the physical body. It can exist without the latter (Śā. 1, 52).

The five *mahābhūtas*, together with the spirit, mind, time and space, constitute the totality of all substances (Sū. 1, 48). They are perceptible to the senses or to the mind (Sū. 1, 62). But they cannot exist singly or without purpose; being ephemeral by nature they cannot escape destruction (Śā. 1, 58).

Of the substances, those which possess sense-organs are called animate, and those which do not are called inanimate. The *guṇas* represent the sense properties of colour, taste, smell, touch, and hearing, besides the mechanical and other properties which all elements have in common (*Sū. 1*, 48-50).

All senses are mere variations of the five *mahābhūtas*, but each sense partakes of one *mahābhūta* in a preponderating degree and possesses a special capacity for grasping that particular *mahābhūta* (*Sū. 8*, 14).

Conscious perception arises from the fusion of the *ātman*, mind, senses and sense-objects (*Śā. 1*, 34). This fusion cannot be achieved by accident; an agent is necessary (*Śā. 1*, 44). The ultimate source of consciousness and knowledge is the *Puruṣa* or transcendent self (*Śā. 1*, 41). The *Puruṣa* has no beginning in time; it is not manifest to the senses, cannot be realized except by inference and does not come under any known category (*Śā. 1*, 60 and 62). It is everlasting, all-pervading and changeless (*Śā. 1*, 61). Had there been no *Puruṣa* there would have been neither good nor evil, no knowledge, no doer and no knower (*Śā. 1*, 39). All these would be causeless. Neither could there be any awareness of these, nor would they serve any purpose by their existence (*Śā. 1*, 42). There would have been no dissolution nor creation, no birth nor death, no continuity of life, no consciousness nor perception, no pleasure nor pain, no dynamic nor static condition, no science nor scripture, no bondage nor liberation, if there were no *Puruṣa* (*Śā. 1*, 38-41).

Caraka holds that life results from the combination of the body, the senses, the mind and the self (*ātman*), and that it rests on the body, the mind and the self, as on a tripod. If, therefore, any of these supports be missing, life ceases to exist (*Sū. 1*, 42, 46). As already stated, transcendent self (*paraṇ ātmā*) is different from manifest self which participates in the union of the body, mind and the senses (*Sū. 1*, 41, 45, 47, 55, 56).

(b) CONCEPTION AND BIRTH

There are four different origins of living beings: womb, egg, sweat, and the seed. Each of these classes shows countless varieties. The viviparous and oviparous embryos assume the shape of such wombs as they find themselves in, though they originate from a complex of causative factors (*Śā. 3*, 16).

Conception occurs inside the womb by the union of semen, ovum and the spirit (*Śā. 4*, 5). By the physical act of mating union takes place between the semen (sperm cell) and the female ovum (germ cell); then the spirit, associated with the mind, descends and enters into the zygote formed, and a new embryonic life is created (*Śā. 3*, 2). If the spirit does not descend, no life is created and conception fails to occur (*Śā. 3*, 11). The conscious spirit gravitates to the needed ingredients; it creates its own body by gathering the elements together—first the *ākāśa* (ether) alone, then in due order the other *bhūtas*. The process is completed in an infinitely small fraction of time (*Śā. 4*, 8).

The conception of all living beings originates from the combined contribution of the mother, the father, the spirit, the essence of the elemental properties and nourishment (Śā. 3, 3). It is the mind which yokes the living organism to the spirit and holds the senses together. With the departure of the mind, the organism becomes a lifeless matter (Śā. 3, 13).

The spirit in the embryo is the embodied soul. The soul is eternal, diseaseless, decayless, ageless, deathless, indivisible, indestructible, immovable, omniform, omnifunctional, immutable, invisible and infinite (Śā. 3, 8).

Hence, there is no birth in the true sense. What we call birth is the mere transition of the already existing sperm, ovum and spirit to the new status of embryo after their union (Śā. 3, 8). The spirit is the eternal self and passes through a succession of forms, having no beginning. Life and the spirit, both are without beginning and neither is antecedent to the other (Śā. 1, 82).

(c) HEREDITY AND EMBRYONIC GROWTH

Caraka assumes that the sperm-cell (*bīja*) of the male parent contains minute elements derived from each of his organs and tissues (Śā. 4, 7). A rational explanation is attempted of the fact that offsprings do not necessarily reproduce every feature of the father, and even a particular womb does not produce identical features in every embryo conceived in it.

A human womb invariably produces a human child in the manner of a wax-mould (Śā. 3, 16), but children differ in many important respects from their parents (Śā. 3, 17). They may be males or females, twins, multiplets (Śā. 2, 11), possessed of sexual abnormalities (Śā. 2, 31) and may have individual characteristics and deformities (Śā. 2, 28-29).

When the sperm (*śukra*) is dominant, a male foetus is formed, but a female is produced when the female germ (*śoṇita*) predominates (Śā. 2, 12). If the united sperm-ovum gets divided into two or more fragments, a corresponding number of new lives are created (Śā. 2, 14). In this case a male is formed from a fragment rich in sperm and female from one rich in ovum (Śā. 2, 13). Non-identical twins or multiplets result from unequal fragments (Śā. 2, 16). Indeterminate sex and abnormalities occur when neither the sperm nor the ovum predominates, or when they are diseased and weak (Śā. 2, 18-21).

Caraka also attempts to explain why congenital deformities of the parents, or constitutional diseases contracted by them in later life, are not necessarily inherited. According to Ātreya's view given in the text (Śā. 3, 15), the parental *bīja* (seed or germ-plasm) contains the whole parental organism in a potential or miniature form but is independent of the parents' developed organs, and is not necessarily affected by their idiosyncrasies or deformities. It is the combination and characters of the constituent elements of the parental *bīja*, which is an organic entity independent of the developed parental body and its organs, that determine the physiological features and predispositions

of the embryo. Congenital defects like blindness, deafness, dumbness, stammering, lameness, deformity of the spinal column or the bony framework, as well as constitutional diseases like madness, leprosy or chronic skin diseases in the parent, do not necessarily produce corresponding deformities or infirmities in the offspring. Only when an element in the parental *bija*, representing a particular organ or tissue accidentally (*daiva*) happens to be defective, undeveloped, or abnormal, the corresponding organ or tissue of the offspring will be similarly affected. Again when constitutional diseases, acquired in later life, are found to be inherited, it is supposed that the *bija* has been infected or affected in that particular instance. Leprosy, for example, is transmitted to the offspring only when the germ-plasm is actually infected with the disease by reason of the leprosy of the parent (*Śā. 3, 15*). This mutual interaction of the germ-plasm and the somatic tissues seems to be a distinctive feature of Ātreya's hypothesis. The continued identity of the germ-plasm from generation to generation, affected by somatic processes only by accident or infection, follows logically from this hypothesis.

Hence offsprings differ from their parents in those tissues and organs whose original representatives in the germ-plasm have been affected by causative factors. The sex, stature and complexion of the offspring is also stated to be affected by the influence of abundant or defective nutrition and by the constituents of foods taken by the parents (*Śā. 3, 5*).

The elements that contribute to the general features of the new-born child are: (1) the mother's blood, (2) the father's semen, and (3) the *karma* of the individual. Its mental traits are determined by the state of the mind of the individual in its previous birth, and will be impure and dull if it was an animal in the previous birth (*Śā. 2, 27*).

The embryo inherits its skin, blood, flesh, fat, heart, liver, lungs, spleen, kidneys, stomach, intestines, etc. from its mother (*Śā. 3, 6*); its bones, teeth, veins, tendons, ligaments, arteries, semen, hair and nails from its father (*Śā. 3, 7*); its mind, senses, consciousness, ego, memory and life-span from the spirit (*Śā. 3, 10*); its clarity of senses, quality of voice, appetite and vitality from parental concordance (*Śā. 3, 11*); its visible shape, vigour, sense of contentment and energy from nourishment (*Śā. 3, 12*).

The embryo is a shapeless jelly (*khetabhūta*) in the first month (*Śā. 4, 9*) and a tumour-like or fleshy shape in the second. By this time there is the first indication of the future sex of the embryo (*Śā. 4, 10*). In the third month the limbs and sense-organs are no longer latent but emerge as separate entities (*Śā. 4, 11*). In the fourth month, the foetus is stabilized and the mother puts on weight (*Śā. 4, 20*). It grows in flesh and blood in the fifth month and in strength and colour in the sixth, at the expense of the mother who becomes emaciated, weak and pale (*Śā. 4, 21-22*). In the seventh month there is an all-round development and in the eighth there is a continuous flow of

vitality to and from the mother (Śā. 4, 23-24). It continues to grow by nourishment until delivery, which should occur in the ninth or tenth month (Śā. 4, 25). Any factor which upsets the proper sequence leads to an abnormal period of gestation, or destruction of the foetus (Śā. 4, 59).

The first stage of foetal development has been assumed differently by different experts in the discourse given in the *Caraka Saṃhitā* (Śā. 6, 21).

The child in the womb has its limbs folded, its head erect and its back towards the mother's abdomen (Śā. 6, 22). Its heart is connected with the mother's heart through the umbilical cord and the placenta; the latter is flooded with blood by the pulsating arteries of the mother. The mother's blood transmits nourishment, vitality, and complexion. The skin-pores of the foetus also absorb the nourishment (Śā. 6, 23). The two minds (of the mother and the foetus) have an intimate psychical connection (Śā. 4, 15/2). The foetus may be destroyed, deformed or may suffer psychic injuries due to physical and emotional disturbance of the mother (Śā. 4, 15-30). Faulty diet and habits, as well as mental shocks, a comprehensive list of which is given in the text, also contribute to this end (Śā. 8, 21).

Instructions are also given by Caraka for the proper care of the pregnant woman; these include specified diet, prophylactic treatment and maintenance of emotional harmony (Śā. 8, 32/1). Such treatments ensure good health, vitality and a pliable womb for the mother, and a soft placenta at the time of delivery (Śā. 8, 32).

The text describes in some detail the symptoms of recent and advanced pregnancy (Śā. 2, 22; 4, 16), and the pre-indications of male and female births (Śā. 2, 24-25). Methods of ensuring the birth of male offspring (Śā. 8, 11-19) are also indicated.

The signs of imminent delivery (Śā. 8, 36), the requirements of an well-appointed maternity house (Śā. 8, 33-35), methods of minimizing labour pains (Śā. 8, 38-39), proper handling and help in delivery (Śā. 8, 40-41), and post-natal care of the child (Śā. 8, 42-45) and its mother (Śā. 8, 48-49) are also described in detail.

(d) HUMORAL THEORY (CONCEPT OF THE ORIGIN OF DISEASES)

The well-known humoral theory, which postulates the existence of three humors in the human body—named *vāyu* (or *vāta*), *pitta* and *kapha*, is built upon the premise that apart from a few exceptions all human beings have a predominance of one of the three humors from the very moment of conception (Śā. 7, 39). The few exceptions are equiposed, enjoying perfect health; the rest can be classified according to the continual predominance of a particular humor in their system. The inherent imbalance makes them always susceptible to diseases (Śā. 7, 40). The types can be diagnosed by their physical characteristics (Vi. 8, 96-99). But diseases actually occur when

the humors are provoked (*Vi. 6, 13*). In normal health the three humors are balanced (*Vi. 6, 13/2*). But if a person of the *vāta* type indulges in foods and acts which provoke that humor, the *vāta* is aggravated and afflicts the person's body with physical and mental disorders of the *vāta* type and impairs his strength, health, complexion and span of life (*Vi. 6, 16/1*). The same consequences are in store for the person of the *pitta* type when that humor is provoked, and same also holds good for the third humor, *kapha* (*Vi. 6, 18/1*). The individual types are much less affected and may in fact be benefited by indulging in foods and acts which provoke the other two humors (*Vi. 6, 13-18; Sū. Chapter 20*).

All pathological conditions of the mind and the body, and even their degrees of severity, are direct results of morbid and aggravated humors (*Vi. 6, 4-9*). The morbidity of one humor can be accompanied by that of a second or by both the others, giving rise to a simultaneous discordance of two or three humors (*Vi. 6, 11*). Thus permutations and combinations of three humors in different degrees may give rise to numerous pathological symptoms (*Vi. chapter 6*). According to the severity of the provoked humors, all diseases can be classified as incurable, major, or minor (*Vi. chapter 7*). It is the physician's duty to try to correct as far as it lies in his power the specific imbalances and to relieve the aggravated humors by proper diet and treatment for each class and type of diseases. Some portions of the *Sūtrasthāna* (Chap. 12, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 22, 24, 27), practically the entire *Cikitsāsthāna* and *Nidānasthāna*, and portions of the other *sthānas* are devoted to the descriptions of various diseases, their classifications according to humors, as well as their dietetic and medicinal treatments.

The three humors *vāyu*, *pitta* and *kapha*, when abnormal (*prakūṣita*), and the various waste products of the body tend to weaken or destroy the body. These are called *malas*. So long as they remain in proper measure they do not pollute or weaken the body or give rise to diseases. Within their proper measure even the *malas* are called *dhātus* (body-constituents). *Mala dhātus* and *prasāda dhātus* (body-constituents which specifically help sustenance and growth) thus co-operate in maintaining the body (*Sū. 28, 3*).

The places in the body, which are usually affected by *vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha* in their abnormal (*prakūṣita*) condition, as described by Caraka, are: bladder, rectum, waist, bones of the legs, and specially the smaller intestine (*pakvāsaya*) for *vāta* affection; sweat, blood, particularly the stomach, for *pitta* affection; head, neck, the joints, stomach, fat and particularly the chest for *kapha* affection (*Sū. 20, 8*).

The physician should find out not only which *doṣa* (humor) is abnormal, but also which qualities of that *doṣa* have run to excess. The nature of the disturbance of a *doṣa* (humor) is determined by the nature of the disturbance of its qualities involved (*Ni. 1, 13*).

(e) *Vāyu* AND ITS ROLE IN HUMAN SYSTEM AND IN NATURE (Sū. 12, 8)

According to Caraka *vāyu* is that which keeps the machine of the body at work. It is the impelling force for all bodily efforts, and sets in motion the sense organs and the mind; it regulates the body elements, maintains equilibrium in the body, stimulates digestion, eliminates harmful matter and waste products, and gives shape to the foetus. It manifests itself in five forms: *prāna*, *udāna*, *samāna*, *vyāna*, and *apāna*. Their seats in different parts of the body and their physiological effects are also specified (Ci. 28, 4-9).

When activated in an abnormal state *vāyu* may create diseases of the body, cause mental depression, affect the sense organs, destroy or deform the foetus, or increase the period of gestation.

In nature *vāyu* serves as an envelope for the earth, supports combustion, causes the formation of clouds, the condensation and precipitation of water as rain, and gives rise to streams. It helps growth of plants, flowers, fruits and crops, and maintains the division of seasons.

Vāyu in an abnormal state in nature is identified with storms and winds, causing damage to matter and life.

The properties of *vāyu* has been described by Caraka as dry (*rukṣa*), cold (*śīta*), light (*laghu*), subtle (*sūkṣma*), moving (*cala*), scattering everything in different directions (*viśada*) and rough (*khara*). *Vāyu* has been identified with the continuity of life (Sū. 1, 59; 12, 8).

(f) MEMORY AND DREAM

Caraka has enumerated eight causes of memory (Śā. 1, 148-149):

(a) Impressions, similar and dissimilar; (b) co-ordination of mind; (c) practice; (d) knowledge; (e) recollection; (f, g, & h) repetition of sight, hearing, and perception

Dreams have been classified by Caraka into seven types, based on (In. 5, 27-46):

(a) Visual impression; (b) auditory impression; (c) experience; (d) inner desires; (e) fancy; (f) premonition; (g) morbid humors.

An account of the different varieties of dreams arising from morbid humors has been given, particularly those foreboding death.

(g) ETHICS IN CARAKA

Caraka advances a very catholic and commonsense view of *karma* and rebirth differing from those of other Indian philosophers. The laws of *karma* are not considered immutable by Caraka who allows a limited amount of freedom to human efforts in arresting the fruits of all ordinary non-moral actions. Only the effects of very good or bad moral actions cannot be thus modified or averted by human efforts. The fruits of all non-moral or ordinary actions can be averted by the exercise of human intelligence,

wisdom and well-balanced conduct, and by the administration of proper medicine and the like. Caraka therefore holds that right conduct (*sadvṛtta*) can help in the preservation of physical and mental health and in securing sense-control (*indriyavijaya*) (*Vi.* 3, 28-38; *Sū.* 8, 17).

Caraka recognizes that there are three primary desires serving as the springs or causes of all our actions. These are: desire for self-preservation (*prāṇaiṣaṇā*), desire for wealth (*dhanaiṣaṇā*), and a desire for a happy future life (*paralokaiṣaṇā*) (*Sū.* 11, 3, 7, 8, 13).

IV. PHYSIOLOGICAL PROCESSES

(a) DIGESTION AND METABOLISM

Production of heat in the body is said to be the basis of life process. The life-span, vital breath, vital essence, body-heat, muscular strength, energy, lustre, etc., all are dependent upon the production of heat inside the organism. When the body-heat becomes abnormal, disease results; when it is suppressed or dies out, there is an end of life (*Ci.* 15, 3-4). In the *Caraka Saṃhitā* the word *agni* has been used for body-heat; its literal meaning is fire. This is related closely to metabolic processes (*Vi.* 6, 12).

This production of body-heat depends upon the intake of food. Food nourishes the body elements, vital essence, strength, etc.; but the nutrient action of food is a result of gastric digestion. If the process of digestion is hampered, food fails to nourish (*Ci.* 15, 5).

Ingested food and drink pass into the stomach and are broken up and softened by the digestive fluid in the stomach. During this process, the food is transformed into a sweet, frothy mucus-like fluid. As the digestive process continues, it becomes acidic and, issuing out of the stomach, excites the secretion of thin bile (*Ci.* 15, 8-10). Ultimately it is converted into assimilable nutritive fluid and also some waste products. Excretions of the body are formed from the waste products (*Sū.* 28, 4/7). The process of digestion ends in the large intestines where the remnants are converted into lumps of stool (*Ci.* 15, 11).

The nutritive fluid formed is converted into blood, flesh, fat, bone-marrow, semen, ligaments and clear fluid (serum?), as well as the sensory faculties (*Sū.* 28, 4/2). The body elements are replenished by the food and are able to maintain the body in a proper condition by gathering the necessary ingredients from food. This replenishment and maintenance take place when the various metabolic processes are proceeding without interruption, and the *srotāṃsi* (movements of body-fluids) are unimpeded in their proper channels. The nutritive fluid then pervades the whole body (*Sū.* 28, 3).

The body channels, constituting the means of passage of the nutritive fluids from food, feed the various body elements in the requisite measure

and with the required constituents (*Sū. 28, 5/1*). The requirements of the body according to size, condition and age determine the quantity of nutritive fluid formed from food, thus maintaining the balance of the body elements (*Sū. 28, 4/3 and 4/4*).

From the waste products of digestion are formed: sweat, urine and stools; the morbid forms of the three body-humors; the excretions of the eyes, ears, nose, mouth, hair-follicles and female parts; the hairs of the head, face and body; and the nails. The quantities produced depend on the age, size and condition of the body (*Sū. 28, 4/1 and 4/4*).

(b) MOVEMENT OF FLUIDS THROUGH CHANNELS OF THE HUMAN BODY

Caraka states that there are innumerable *srotāṃsi* or fluid currents through numerous channels in the human body. They serve to convey nutrients and healing matters where needed, and to carry away decaying and harmful products formed. These *srotas* convey the products of the body elements—blood, flesh, fat, bone, marrow, nutritional juices, semen and life-breath. These body elements cannot develop or decay independently of the *srotas* (*Vi. 5, 4*).

There is as much functional diversity of these channel systems as in the structural composition of the rest of the human body, but the most important among them are those which carry life-breath, water, food, nutritive juices, blood, flesh, fat, bone-matter, marrow, semen, urine, stool and sweat. The three humors—*vāta*, *pitta* and *kapha*—diffuse throughout the entire body with the help of all these channel systems. The supersensory essences of man are independent of the channels; the entire sentient body is, in fact, both the vehicle and the field of their operation (*Vi. 5, 3 and 6*).

The channels are normally in the form of elongated vessels, extensive ducts or convoluted tubes. In dimension, they vary from large to very fine ones (*Vi. 5, 25*). The various types found in the body are: (a) *sirā* or vein, (b) *dhamanī* or artery, (c) *rasāyānya* or ducts, (d) *nāḍī* or tube, (e) *panthā* or tract, (f) *mārga* or passage, (g) *śarīracchidra* or body-orifice, (h) *saṃvṛtāsaṃvṛta* (vessel open at one end only), (i) *sthāna* or container, (j) *āśaya* or bladder, (k) *niketa* or closed container. Some of the channel systems are not visible to the naked eye (*Vi. 5, 9*).

The *srotāṃsi* have specified centres and areas of operation. Such areas develop characteristic symptoms, if any of the *srotas* systems is vitiated or obstructed. (*Vi. 5, 6*). This obstruction is not limited to the stationary and mobile body-channels of the specified area, but may spread to the other *srotas* systems. If, however, any one of the three humors is affected, the entire body is also affected (*Vi. 5, 9*).

In the heart are rooted the ten main channels that carry the vital essence through the whole length and breadth of the body. These main channels

are either *dhamanīs* which pulsate, or *srotāṃsi* which carry nutritive fluids, or *sirā* (Sū. 30, 8 and 12). Heart is regarded as the only seat of consciousness (Sū. 7, 8-9), while *prāṇa* (the vital current) and all the senses emanate from the head (Sū. 9, 4).

The heart is the source of the life-breath *srotas*; the bronchial area is the source of the water *srotas*; the region of the stomach, particularly the left side, is the source of the food *srotas*; the heart with its ten main channels is the source of the *srotas* of nutrition; the liver and spleen are the source of the blood *srotas*; the muscles and skin are the source of the flesh *srotas*; the kidneys and the omentum are the source of the fat *srotas*; the body fat is the source of the bone-matter *srotas*; the bones and joints, of the marrow *srotas*; the testes and phallus, of the semen *srotas*; the kidneys and the bladder, of the urine *srotas*; the colon and the rectum, of the stool *srotas*; and the fat and hair-follicles, of the sweat *srotas* (Vi. 5, 8).

When the *srotāṃsi* are in an abnormal state, there is an increased or decreased flow of the fluids they carry; the channels also become knotted and there is diversion of flow to abnormal channels. The treatment of such conditions consists of treating the various parts of the body which have been recognized as the specific centres of the various *srotāṃsi* (Vi. 5, 24, 26-28).

(c) TASTES

The taste is an intrinsic property of material substances. There are only six basic tastes—sweet, acid, saline, pungent, bitter and astringent (Sū. 26, 9). These six categories of taste, according to Caraka, emerge in different substances from the collocation in unequal proportions (preponderance or paucity) of the five *mahābhūtas* or primal elements. The same view is held regarding the origin of colour (Sū. 26, 40/2).

The sensation, which is immediately perceived on contact of the substance proper with the tongue, is called 'taste'. Any sensation subsequent thereto is called the after-taste or latent taste. The physiological action of all substances depends upon the taste and also its after-taste, if any (Sū. 26, 28, 43).

All tastes are conveyed through the medium of water which, according to Caraka, sustains all animal and plant life (Sū. 26, 30). But water has a taste which is imperceptible. Palatability, or otherwise, of a substance is a matter of personal idiosyncrasy, while its beneficial or harmful action depends on factors, like its composition, purity and the time and clime of its use (Sū. 26, 9).

Single or pure tastes are to be found in many substances, but they occur mostly in combinations. For example, alkaline substances possess a complex taste, with saline and pungent tastes predominating. By the presence of two, three, four, five or all six tastes in the same substance, fifty-seven mixed tastes may arise, which with the six simple tastes make sixty-three different tastes (Sū. 26, 9 and 24).

In common with the bodily humors, tastes have the inherent properties of heaviness, lightness, coldness, heat, oiliness and dryness. (*Sū. 26, 9*). A knowledge of the tastes of different substances is therefore essential in the treatment of diseases which are caused by the abnormalities of the body humor (*Sū. 26, 27*). In fact, each and every substance, due to the inherent property of taste, may be put to medicinal use, with due consideration to the appropriate time of its application, its quantity, purity, combination with other substances, physical properties and dosage (*Sū. 26, 12, 29*).

The text describes in detail the beneficial physiological actions of the substances belonging to the basic taste groups, and the pathological symptom produced by their exclusive indulgence or over-indulgence. Thus, with the taste as guide, all edible and medicinal substances, taken in the right measure and manner, are invariably beneficial (*Sū. 26, 43-44*).

V. HEALTH AND LONGEVITY

(a) PERSONAL HYGIENE

Caraka enjoins constant vigilance and a regular daily and seasonal routine of prophylactic measures for the maintenance of health and vigour (*Sū. 5, 103*). The use of collyrium at night and of eye-salve and eye-drop after exposure to glare are recommended for good eyesight. Smoking of pipes and cigars, containing medicinal herbs, at regular intervals everyday is said to prevent neuralgic pains and increase mental alertness (*Sū. 5, 15-27*), but many complications and even permanent injury may be caused by uncontrolled smoking, especially in an exhausted or intoxicated state (*Sū. 5, 38-45*).

The application of medicated oil to the nostrils at prescribed times retards senility and maintains the acuteness of sight, smell and hearing (*Sū. 5, 48-70*).

Brushing the teeth twice a day with partly crushed green twigs of certain plants, and scraping the tongue with shaped metallic scrapers, ensure strong teeth, sweet breath and a good appetite. Medicated gargles keep the facial muscles young, sharpen taste, increase appetite, and prevent dental decay (*Sū. 5, 71-80*).

Daily massage of the scalp and hair with approved vegetable oils prevents insomnia, baldness, grey hairs and sagging of the face muscles (*Sū. 5, 81-83*).

Draining the ear-passage with oil prevents deafness and other affections of the ear (*Sū. 5, 84*).

Daily massage of the body prevents excessive sweating, removes offensive body-odour and gives suppleness to muscles and tendons (*Sū. 5, 90-93*). Massaging with oils acts as a tonic to the skin, induces tolerance to physical hardship, makes the contours of the body firm and the skin glossy (*Sū. 5, 84-86*).

Bathing promotes vitality, physical stamina, longevity and removes fatigue (*Sū. 5, 94*).

The feet and private parts are to be kept scrupulously clean, and the hair, beard and nails regularly trimmed (*Sū. 5, 98*).

The use of clean apparel, foot-wear and umbrellas promotes mental as well as physical comfort, and ensures good health (*Sū. 5, 95, 100-101*).

Regulated physical exercise aids digestion and increases capacity for work and physical strength, but overexercise or excessive physical work, indicated by an increased rate of respiration and a feeling of oppression in the cardiac region, causes debility and wasting diseases (*Sū. 7, 31-35*).

In order to maintain good health one should not unnecessarily or unduly suppress the natural urges and body-functions; he should not sleep in a crooked position, nor on a narrow and uneven bed; he should not ride on an uncomfortable saddle or carriage-seat; he should not gaze directly at the sun or strong lights, nor expose himself to strong sunlight, storm or snow-fall for extended periods, nor warm himself directly before or over a fire; he should not indulge excessively in alcoholic drinks, heavy meals, or sexual acts, nor mate with a diseased or unfit partner, nor take part in unnatural or improper sexual relations; he should avoid keeping late hours, taking a cold bath or a cold drink in a fatigued condition, and using soiled clothes after a bath (*Sū. 8, 19-22*).

The mental impulses of greed, fear, anger, excessive melancholy, vanity, hatred, harsh speech and evil thoughts are as injurious to the body as to the mind (*Sū. 7, 26-28*).

All harmful physical and mental habits can be overcome gradually by proper training or by personal effort (*Sū. 7, 36-38*).

Special measures are recommended for the maintenance of health during seasonal changes. Sudation, sunbath, warm apartments, thick and protective dress and bedding, and rich food are recommended when the cold season sets in (*Sū. 6, 9-21*). Physical exercise, lightly cooked meats and light alcoholic beverages are prescribed for spring time (*Sū. 6, 24-26*). Rich food, alcohol and hard exercise should be avoided in summer. In the hottest days one should not venture out in the noon-time heat, but take rest by sleeping during the day in order to compensate for keeping late hours at night (*Sū. 7, 30*). Thrice a year at prescribed seasons, the body should be cleansed of all accumulated waste matter by sudation, steam-baths, emesis, purgative drugs, enemas, and douches (*Sū. 7, 47*).

(b) EFFECTS OF ENVIRONMENT ON HEALTH

Caraka treats bodily health not only as a personal problem, but also in its relation to heredity (*Śā. 3, 3-17*), geographical environment, climate, water-supply and seasonal variations (*Vi. 3, 6*). The possibility of diseases due to such external factors alone was recognized (*Vi. 3, 4*).

According to Caraka, though individual persons differ widely in physical health and vitality, they are collectively liable to devastating epidemics caused by external factors (*Vi.* 3, 6-7).

Inhabitants of open spaces with scanty rainfall, and predominance of dry winds and of isolated forest areas are generally well-knit, hardy and healthy. Inhabitants of humid climates with abundant rainfall, marshy lands, deltas, and dense forests are generally delicate in physique and in health. Areas with a proper balance of dry and moist seasons and of open spaces and forests generally contribute to good health (*Ka.* 1, 8; *Vi.* 3, 7, 47).

It is stated that from the beginning of the summer to the end of the rainy season there is a gradual waning of strength in man (*Sū.* 6, 6-7). The cold season increases appetite and digestive power, when, with proper nourishment, the bodily vigour reaches its highest peak (*Sū.* 6, 8-9).

(c) NUTRITION AND DIET

Āhāratattva (*Sū.* 25, 35, etc.) or dietetics forms an important and integral part of the *Caraka Samhitā* (*Sū.* Chap. 5, 6, 25, 26, 27; *Śā.* Chap. 6). Wholesome diet is stated to promote bodily growth and health; unwholesome food is the most important cause of diseases (*Sū.* 25, 31). The importance of a proper diet in health and sickness is repeatedly stressed upon (*Sū.* Chap. 5, 6; *Śā.* Chap. 6). In the chapter on digestion it is asserted that the life-process itself depends upon the production of body-heat, derived from the food taken (*Ci.* 15, 3-5).

A direct relationship is said to exist between the tastes of substances and their physiological actions. No distinction can be drawn between foods and drugs, as both possess taste and nutritive value, and exert specific action on the body.

Edible and potable substances are classified into cereals, legumes, potable water, salts, pot-herbs, fish, flesh, fruits, sugarcane derivatives, milk, ghee and other milk products, vegetable oils, lards, animal fats, and alcoholic beverages (*Sū.* 25, 38). The most nutritive and the most harmful in each class are listed (*Sū.* 25, 38-39). Eggs, blood and semen of various creatures are also stated to have nutritive value, though their use is not recommended (*Śā.* 6, 10).

The text mentions in detail the digestibility, nutritive value and medicinal action of several hundred different edible and potable substances of various classes (*Sū.* Chap. 27). It is pointed out that all such substances can gain in nutritive value or become harmful by combination with other items, by cooking or preparation, and according to quantity taken, palatability, appetite, bodily health, local climate, season, and eating habits (*Sū.* 26, 87-89). A list of substances which are incompatible with each other, or unwholesome in particular seasons, is given (*Sū.* 26, 84 *et seq.*).

Even light, easily digested and nutritious food should not be taken in excess of bodily requirements, or after the appetite has been satisfied. Difficultly digestible food should not be taken habitually. If ever used, the quantity should not exceed a fraction of a full meal (*Sū. 5, 7-11*). Rich spicy foods, fats, and alcoholic drinks are stated to be beneficial in the cold season; lightly cooked cereals and meats, salts and light wines in spring and autumn; and light gruels, vegetables, fruits and acidulated cold drinks in summer (*Sū. Chap. 6*).

According to their intrinsic properties different foods undergo metabolism into body-elements of the same nature and inhibit the formation of those having opposite properties (*Sū. 6, 16*). A properly planned diet, using various agreeable and nourishing foods in rotation, regulates the body-elements (*Sū. 6, 6 and 7*).

(d) REJUVENATION

Revitalization therapy is a prominent feature of the *Caraka Saṃhitā*. It is suggested that the body-fluids are capable of being replenished and renewed by proper medication; and that it is possible to achieve not only vitality and vigour, but also greater resistance to disease, longevity without senile decay, heightened memory and intelligence, and an improvement in bodily strength, personal beauty and sense perceptions. In fact, Caraka asserts that even in old age it is possible to regain youth and remain youthful for a very long period. (*Ci. 1/1, 6-12*).

The treatment for rejuvenation follows the fulfilment of three preliminary conditions: namely, the patient must start with a single-minded determination and complete faith; he should undergo the treatment in a nursing home (the exact specifications and equipment of which are listed); he should remain under the constant supervision of his physician. The season and weather for treatment must be properly selected (*Ci. 1/1, 17-23*).

The body is then thoroughly cleansed by oil massage and sudation by various means. A course of intestinal aperients like myrobolans, rock-salt and special spices is given for cleansing the intestines. The diet is limited to light gruel and warm water (*Ci. 1/1, 25-27*).

Many preparations are prescribed for the actual rejuvenation process. The fruits, plants and herbs used for such prescriptions must be collected from Himalayan forests in their proper seasons and in perfect and flawless state. Pure honey, ghee, salts and minerals are also mentioned as ingredients in many prescriptions. Special diets are described in all cases (*Ci. Chap. 1*).

Claims have been made that it is possible by a special course of rejuvenation to transform entirely an aged and diseased body into a fresh and youthful one in the course of six months (*Ci. 1/4, 7*).

(e) PUBLIC SANITATION

Some advice regarding public sanitation is found in the *Caraka Saṃhitā*. People are urged to avoid all filthy matters like offal, broken fragments of cooking vessels, and waters of public baths (*Sū. 8, 18/6*). Blowing the nose in a crowd or committing nuisance on a public road is forbidden. Adultery, association with prostitutes, gambling, drunkenness, crude habits of eating, dirty or inadequate dress, and picking the nose, or sneezing, are considered unhealthy practices to be avoided by those aspiring after a clean and meritorious life (*Sū. 8, 19-25*).

Contaminated water is recognized to be a major cause of ill health and epidemics (*Vi. 3, 7*), and the use of only clean and pure water from natural sources is recommended at various places of the text (*Sū. 6, 47, etc.*).

VI. PHYSICIANS IN CARAKA

The *Caraka Saṃhitā* lays down an elaborate code regarding the training, duties, privileges and social status of physicians.

Any person could aspire to be a physician, provided he had a clear idea of the duties and obligations pertaining to the profession. Good health, capacity for sustained effort and single-minded devotion to the science were considered as essential qualifications for the student of medicine. An austere and celibate life was enjoined for the disciple during his training period (*Vi. 8, 3, 7, 13*).

The student was free to choose his own branch of the science. The choice of a teacher also rested with him. But it was for the teacher to assess the merit of the candidate from his appearance, voice, acuteness of sensory perceptions, personality, intellectual capacity and mental outlook before selecting him as a disciple. Instructions were given free. The disciple lived with the preceptor like a son, slave or suppliant till the training was completed and had to follow a rigid time-table (*Vi. 8, 3, 4, 7, 8, 13*).

Aspiration for success, wealth and fame was considered normal on the part of an intending physician; but obligations to his future patients and to the society were repeatedly impressed upon by the preceptor. Desertion of, or injury to, patients under any circumstances was strictly forbidden (*Vi. 8, 13*).

A physician should remain, in a sense, a student all his life, gaining experience, knowledge and understanding. Great stress has been laid on periodic discussions and debates with other physicians in conferences and in private (*Vi. 8, 13, 20*). Theoretical knowledge, clarity of reasoning, wide practical experience, and personal skill have been described as the four valued qualifications of the physician (*Vi. 9, 6*). He is expected to lead a disciplined and unostentatious life, to be pleasant in his manners, and to be considerate and

gentle in speech (*Vi.* 8, 13). Friendship towards all, compassion for the ailing, devotion to professional duties and a philosophical attitude to cases with fatal endings—these have been defined as the four corner-stones of medical practice (*Sū.* 9, 26). Caraka advises that the physicians, while treating diseases, should also observe the instructions of the *Atharvaveda*, which include *svastyayana* (propitiatory rites), *balī* (offerings), *maṅgala homa* (auspicious oblations), *niyama* (penances), *prāyaścitta* (purificatory rites), *upavāsa* (fasting) and *mantra* (incantations), as also the use of *maṇi* (gems) in amulets (*Sū.* 30, 21; 26, 70; *Ci.* 1, 3.)

According to Caraka a physician is not expected to treat a person hated by the king or by the public (*Vi.* 8, 13), or a habitually vicious or dishonourable person (*Vi.* 3, 45). He is also not expected to treat patients suffering from incurable maladies (*Sū.* 10, 8).

The physician must not enter a private house without previous permission or proper introduction, nor attend a woman in the absence of her husband or guardian. He must not also say or do anything which might shock the patient or the relations and friends of the patient. He must not divulge any information about the patient and his household (*Vi.* 8, 13).

The physician, according to Caraka, should be held in high respect both by the king and the public (*Sū.* 9, 19). The practice of medicine by unqualified persons or self-styled physicians has been strongly condemned (*Sū.* 29, 12).

The physician is expected to maintain his own nursing home and dispensary, prepare medicinal preparations from raw materials, and arrange for the services of nurses and qualified attendants (*Sū.* Chap. 15).

VII. DIAGNOSIS OF DISEASES

The *Saṃhitā* gives directions for the diagnosis of a large number of diseases from a consideration of their etiology, symptoms and prognosis. It also contains an exposition of the general theory and methods of diagnosis.

According to Caraka, there are three means open to the physician for ascertaining the nature of any sickness. They are: (i) theoretical knowledge of the possible causes and symptoms of all known diseases, (ii) meticulous observation of the patient's symptoms and complaints, (iii) inferences based on previous experience. In the absence of one or more of the three aids to diagnosis, or with their fragmentary or incorrect knowledge, the physician cannot come to a true conclusion (*Vi.* 4, 3-5).

At another place Caraka again states that the three methods for the ascertainment of the nature of diseases are: *nidāna* (cause and effect relation), *pūrvavartā* (invariable prognostication), and *upāśaya* and *anupāśaya* (concomitant variation) (*Ni.* 1, 7, 8, 10).

It is essential for the physician to have an exhaustive theoretical know-

ledge of the nature of all diseases—their specific sources, exciting factors, preliminary indications, bodily symptoms, local pains caused by them, possible complications and aggravations, degrees of severity, periods of duration, and indications of recovery and convalescence. By interrogation and by the application of his own trained senses the physician should conduct a detailed examination of the patient's appearance, voice, abnormalities, intestinal and other internal sounds, blood and other body-fluids, and bodily excretions. If necessary, he should draw a sample of the patient's blood and test it by offering it to a dog or a crow. He should also gather all possible information regarding the digestion, bowel movement, vitality, acuteness of sensory perceptions, clarity of mind, memory, psychic condition, irregularities of behaviour, dreams, aversions, hankerings and complaints of the patient. Latent symptoms, if any, should be tested by provocative medication. Only then he can make a diagnosis of the ailment, determine the expectation of recovery or imminence of death, and decide upon a course of treatment (*Vi.* 4, 6-9). It has been emphasized that fever is the first symptom of all diseases (*Ni.* 1, 16).

Diseases can be mild or severe. The preliminary symptoms are often the same. In fact, the behaviour, bodily appearance and apparent vitality of the patient may sometimes give false indications. It is easy for the inexperienced physician to jump to conclusions on insufficient or misleading evidence. A mild palliative prescribed for a disease which is destined to become serious, or a strong medicine for a mild variety, may cause considerable injury to the patient; even death may result. Mere identification of a disease does not mean its diagnosis; it is absolutely necessary to foresee its possible course and severity (*Vi.* 7, 2, 3, 5, 7).

Some diseases are incurable and are known as such by their peculiar symptoms; such symptoms often indicate the period the patient will survive (*Ni.* 1, 6; *In.* Chap. 6 & 7). Some diseases are secondary, being caused by others occurring earlier. They may occur after the original malady subsides, or may run simultaneously with the later phase of the primary disease (*Ni.* 8, 20-23).

In diagnosis the patient's personal history and background are of great importance. Residents of different countries are used to different diets, have different habits, and differ in physical fitness and mental inclinations. Hence, what is wholesome and normal for one type of people may have opposite effects on another. The liability to diseases of a person depends upon his place of birth, normal place of residence and accidental presence in a foreign country (*Vi.* 8, 93).

The patient's nature, abnormalities, vitality, physical build, bodily proportions, physical equilibrium, psychic condition, capacity for food, capacity for physical exercise, and age — all are important factors in diagnosis (*Vi.* 8, 94).

If the body-elements are individually healthy and collectively in harmony with each other, the patient is highly resistant to diseases and specially to diseases of the severe type (*Vi. 8*, 111). He is also not easily affected by senile decay. The opposite is true for people with unhealthy and unbalanced body-elements (*Vi. 8*, 112). In addition to these extreme cases, there are also intermediate types (*Vi. 8*, 113).

VIII. METHODS OF TREATMENT, INCLUDING SURGERY

Different types of methods for the treatment of diseases have been described by Caraka, as follows:

- (1) *Oral medication* by single or compounded medicinal substances; sometimes more than fifty in a prescription are listed. Special emphasis is laid on diet, considered an essential part of the treatment (*Sū. Chap. 5, 6, 25, 26, 27*). Purgation and/or emesis is frequently recommended for cleansing the system of accumulated waste materials. Apart from drugs, purging is also effected by enemas (*Ci. Chap. 7, 13, etc.*; *Si. Chap. 9-12*).
- (2) (a) *Eye-drops and -salves* for eye diseases and loss of visual power (*Sū. 5*, 18, etc.).
 (b) *Gargles* for diseases of the mouth, throat, teeth and gums (*Sū. 5*, 78, 79, etc.).
 (c) *Medicinal cigars and smoking mixtures* for affections of the head, nose, throat and bronchial tract (*Sū. 5*, 24, etc.).
 (d) *Nasal medication in the form of powders, ointments, or inhaled fumes* for psychic disorders, fainting fits, and affections of the nose (*Sū. 5*, 13, 14, etc.). In epilepsy and insanity, herbs and animal substances are burnt for inhalation (*Ci. Chap. 10*).
- (3) *Liquid unguents, creams, salves, ointments, lotions and medicated oils* for the skin and other parts (*Ci. Chap. 6, 7, etc.*).
- (4) *Suppositories, tampons, and soaked cotton swabs* for ear-passages and lower orifices of the body (*Ci. Chap. 7, 8, etc.*).
- (5) *Enemas* of nutritive and healing fluid-mixtures for absorption in the rectal and vaginal passages in wasting diseases, debility and fractures (*Si. Chap. 3, 5, 12, etc.*).
- (6) *Douches* for flushing the rectal, vaginal and urethral passages and for relieving congestion (*Sū. Chap. 9, 10, etc.*). Douche cans, tubes, and catheters, made of gold, silver or alloys, were used for this purpose (*Sū. 1*, 44, 45, etc.).
- (7) *Sweating* the body surface by sun-bath, heated air, steam, or contact with hot surfaces for cleansing the system of absorbed impurities; sudation by steaming decoctions of medicinal

- substances, vapours, fomentation, poultices, solid lumps of medicinal matter and hot immersion bath (*Sū. Chap. 14*).
- (8) *Bandages, splints and tourniquets* in fractures and surgical conditions (*Si. Chap. 9*). *Ligatures* for poisonous bites and for surgical operations (*Ci. Chap. 23, 24, etc.*).
- (9) *Bleeding* by incision, or by the application of leeches, in poisonous bites, epilepsy, rheumatism, etc. (*Ci. Chap. 10, 23, etc.*).
- (10) *Excision, incision, puncturing, removal of the skin-layer, cauterization, surgical removal, rupturing, probing and other surgical methods* (*Sū. 11, 55*); the removal of a dead foetus (*Śā. 8, 30, et seq.*) and an operation for peritonitis (*Ci. 13, 185 et seq.*) have been described in some detail; scalpels, metallic probes, etc. were used in such processes (*Si. Chap. 9*). The use of live ants of the big variety to grip together and hold tight the skin-flaps after an internal operation has been described (*Ci. 13, 190 et seq.*). The ants were killed by hot water and cut in two, with their gripping jaws left behind.
- (11) *Psychiatric methods* for curing mental conditions (*Vi. Chap. 6*).

In the treatment of all diseases the physician should take care to perform the following preparatory processes: purification (purgation, emesis, etc.), tranquilization (use of sedatives) of the system, and avoidance of all causative factors (*Vi. 8, 30*).

IX. POISONS

The *Caraka Samhitā* includes a detailed discussion of the various categories of poisons and the means by which they enter the human system; their symptoms, effects and antidotes are also described.

The venoms secreted by animals, reptiles, aquatic creatures and insects are conveyed by their bites. They generally act very rapidly causing burning sensation, inflammation, swelling, drowsiness, fainting and diarrhoea. The symptoms are more pronounced in the lower extremities of the body (*Ci. 10, 15, 17, 23*).

Poisons from vegetable roots and bulbs, mineral poisons and artificially prepared poisons enter the human body through foods, beverages, water, smoke, vapours, skin-applications, or by mere contact (*Ci. 23, 106-122*). Such poisons act slowly and cause fever, spasms, throat contraction, muscular rigidity, partial paralysis, frothy salivation and vomiting. The symptoms are more pronounced in the upper parts of the body (*Ci. 23, 16-17*).

The toxic effects are liable to be mistaken for diseases (*Ci. 23, 18*). They vitiate the blood and other body-elements progressively; eight distinct stages with increasingly graver symptoms have been noted (*Ci. 23, 14*). Death may be caused by poisoning in the absence of proper treatment (*Ci. 23, 31*).

Treatment for poisoning consists in the immediate application of stimulants to protect the heart, followed by incision, tourniquets, ligatures, suction, blood-letting, application of freshly cut meat, oral medicines and counter-poisons, according to the nature of the toxic substance (*Ci.* **23**, 35-50). For poisoning through food, drinks, etc., the immediate treatment is emesis (*Ci.* **23**, 122).

A description of the distinctive symptoms of bites by ten types of snakes (cobra, viper, etc.), mosquitoes, poisonous flies, hornets, spiders, scorpions, lizards, rats, crabs, toads (*Ci.* **23**, 124-158), dogs and some predatory animals (*Ci.* **23**, 175, 220-232) is found in the text with specific antidotes for individual cases.

The medicinal value of venoms and vegetable poisons were known in Caraka's time. They are described to have antagonistic effects in the presence of each other (*Ci.* **23**, 17). A significant passage states that even deadly poisons can be converted into excellent medicines by the right method of application (*Sū.* **1**, 126).

Fumigation from vegetable and animal substances has been described as an antidote for most poisons (*Ci.* **23**, 99). The insecticidal and vermifugal action of fumigation were also recognized and several recipes given for the purpose (*Ci.* **23**, 98-100).

X. PHYSICOCHEMICAL PROCESSES

Many of the common laboratory processes known today are found in the *Caraka Saṃhitā*. They occur in various passages which give instructions for compounding medicinal preparations (*Ci.* Chap. 1, 2, 15, etc.). A list of terms for such processes is given in Table 17.

Actual weights of the various ingredients of prescriptions are given in many cases; volumes are given in some instances. The *tulā* (balance) was used for weighing, and *mānabhāṇḍas* (measuring vessels) for measuring liquids (*Sū.* **15**, 7). A list of the apparatus, mentioned in the various processes, is given in Table 16.

Descriptions of the following processes are given in some detail:

- (1) A flame test for food-poisons (possibly copper salts), where the flame shows a colour like the feathers of a peacock (*Ci.* **23**, 109).
- (2) A process of destructive distillation (*Ci.* **15**, 174).
- (3) A process for the separation of the volatile components of a mixture, using distillation and air-condensation (*Ci.* **1/2**, 14).
- (4) A process for continuous extraction of the fatty matter present in a plant product by repeated distillation with a volatile oil, followed by its condensation (*Vi.* **7**, 22).

For the purpose of heating, wood and the dried cakes of various animal dungs were used according to the temperature required (*Ci.* Chap. 1, 2, 15, etc.).

The mechanical processes mentioned are listed in Table 18.

XI. CLASSIFICATIONS

Vibhāgavidyā (*Vi.* 4, 4), or the theory of classification, is a feature of the *Caraka Samhitā*.

Many substances and phenomena are divided into rational groups.

(1) The days of the *Samvatsara* (solar year) are divided into :

(a) *Udakāyana* (period of absorption of moisture)

(b) *Dakṣiṇāyana* or *Visarga* (period of liberation of moisture).

Each of these periods is sub-divided into three seasons (*Śū.* 6, 4).

(2) *Deśa* (habitable land) is classified according to topography, rainfall and vegetation into:

(a) *Jaṅgala* (dry grass lands)

(b) *Anuṣa* (wet lands)

(c) *Sādhāraṇa* (intermediate types) (*Ka.* 1, 8).

(3) *Prāṇī* (living creatures) are classified according to their manner of birth as:

(i) *Jarāyuja* (born of womb)

(ii) *Anḍaja* (born of eggs)

(iii) *Svedaja* (born of heat and moisture)

(iv) *Udbhidja* (born of seeds) (*Śā.* 3, 16).

They are also classified in different contexts as:

(a) *Kṛmi* (parasites found in living creatures) (*Sū.* 19, 4-9)

(b) *Kiṭa* (wingless insects) (*Sū.* 27, 213)

(c) *Pataṅga* (flying insects) (*Śā.* 8, 59)

(d) *Ekaśapha* (solidungulate animals) (*Sū.* 27, 211)

(e) *Dviśapha* (cloven-footed animals) (*Ci.* 17, 118)

(f) *Mṛga* (herbivorous animals) (*Sū.* 13, 11)

(g) *Kṛavyāda* (carnivorous animals) (*Sū.* 22, 27)

(h) *Śvāpāda* (dangerous beasts of prey) (*Śā.* 8, 59)

(i) *Vyāla* (beasts of prey) (*Ci.* 23, 176)

(j) *Gomāyu* (creatures with poisonous fangs or stings) (*Ci.* 23, 10)

(k) *Sarpa* (snakes) (*Sū.* 27, 213).

Creatures, whose flesh has got dietic value, have been divided into eight groups (*Sū.* chap. 27). Table I gives a list of these groups.

(4) *Udbhid* substances (plants or vegetation) are said to be of four types:

(i) *Vanaspati* (bearing fruits only)

(ii) *Vānaspatya* (bearing fruits as well as flowers)

(iii) *Oṣadhi* (dying after bearing fruits)

(iv) *Virudha* (shrubs or herbs).

Udbhid substances (plants) also are divided in fifty groups according to the physiological actions of their decoctions (*Sū.* chap. 4):

- (a) *Jivaniya* (promoter of longevity)
- (b) *Bṛṃhaniya* (roborant and nourishing)
- (c) *Lekhaniya* (reducing obesity and scarifying)
- (d) *Bhedaniya* (promoter of excretion)
- (e) *Sandhāniya* (promotes joining of fractured parts)
- (f) *Dīpaniya* promoter of digestion)
- (g) *Balya* (promoter of strength)
- (h) *Varṇya* (brightens complexion)
- (i) *Kaṇṭhya* (improves voice)
- (j) *Hṛdya* (cordial)
- (k) *Tṛptighna* (removes sense of satiety)
- (l) *Aśaghna* (curative of piles or haemorrhoids)
- (m) *Kuṣṭhaghna* (curative of obstinate skin diseases)
- (n) *Kaṇḍughna* (curative of pruritus)
- (o) *Kṛmighna* (curative of worms)
- (p) *Viśaghna* (antidote to poisoning)
- (q) *Stanyaajanana* (promoter of lactation)
- (r) *Stanyaśodhana* (purifier of breast-milk)
- (s) *Śukrajanana* (promoter of semen generation)
- (t) *Śukraśodhana* (purifier of semen)
- (u) *Snehopaga* (emollient)
- (v) *Svedopaga* (diaphoretic)
- (w) *Vamanopaga* (emetic)
- (x) *Virecanopaga* (purgative)
- (y) *Arusthāpanopaga* (useful in corrective enemas)
- (z) *Anuvasanopaga* (useful in enemas)
- (aa) *Śirovirecanopaga* (prevents discharges from the nose)
- (bb) *Chardinigrahaṇa* (curative of nausea)
- (cc) *Tṛṣṇānigrahaṇa* (curative of morbid thirst)
- (dd) *Hikkānigrahaṇa* (curative of hiccup)
- (ee) *Puriṣasaṃgrahaṇiṇi* (renders faecal matters consistent)
- (ff) *Puriṣavirajaniṇi* (alters colour of faecal pigment)
- (gg) *Mūtrasaṃgrahaṇiṇi* (corrective of excessive urination)
- (hh) *Mūtravirajaniṇi* (curative of coloured urine)
- (ii) *Mūtravirecaniṇi* (diuretic)
- (jj) *Kāśahara* (curative of cough)
- (kk) *Śvāsahara* (curative of laboured breathing)
- (ll) *Svayathuhara* (curative of swelling and oedema)

- (mm) *Jvarahara* (curative of fever)
- (nn) *Śramahara* (curative of fatigue)
- (oo) *Dāhapraśamana* (curative of burning sensation)
- (pp) *Śītapraśamana* (curative of the sensation of cold)
- (qq) *Udardapraśamana* (curative of urticaria)
- (rr) *Āṅgamardapraśamana* (relieves pain in the limbs)
- (ss) *Śūlapraśamana* (cures pain in the bowels)
- (tt) *Śoṇitasthāpana* (haemostatic)
- (uu) *Vedanāsthāpana* (anodyne)
- (vv) *Samjñāsthāpana* (resuscitative)
- (ww) *Prajāsthāpana* (procreant, or curative of sterility)
- (xx) *Vayahsthāpana* (prevents ageing).

A mention of the classification of plants into male and female varieties is found in Caraka in the case of the *Kūṭaja* (*Holarrhena antidysentrica*) plant (*Ka.* 5, 3, 5).

(5) *Dravya* (material substance) can be of three types in the context of their medicinal use:

- (i) *Jaṅgama* (originating from mobile living bodies)
- (ii) *Udbhid* (originating from plants)
- (iii) *Pārthiva* (of mineral origin) (*Sū.* 1, 68):
 - (i) *Jaṅgama* substances used in medicine are: *madhu* (honey), *gorasa* (milk), *pitta* (bile), *vasā* (fat), *majjā* (bone-marrow), *asṛk* (blood), *āmiṣa* (flesh), *mūtra* (urine), *carma* (hide), *retas* (semen), *asthi* (bone), *snāyu* (tendon or ligament), *śṛṅga* (horn), *nakha* (nail), *khura* (hoof), *keśa* (hair), *loma* (fur or body-hair), *rocanā* (a bright yellow deposit obtained from bile) (*Sū.* 1, 69)
 - (ii) *Udbhid* substances used in medicine are: *mūla* (root), *tvak* (bark), *sāra* (pith), *niryyāsa* (resin or exudate), *nāla* (hollow stem or stalk), *khara* (prickly or rough parts), *pallava* (sprout or shoot), *kṣāra* (alkaline matter), *kṣīra* (sap), *phala* (fruit), *puṣpa* (flower), *bhasma* (ash), *tailāni* (expressed or essential oils), *kaṇṭaka* (thorn), *patrāṇi* (leaves), *śūṅga* (sheath or calyx of bud), *kanda* (bulb), *praroḥa* (parasitic growth) (*Sū.* 1, 73-74).
 - (iii) *Pārthiva* substances used in medicine are: *suvarṇa* (gold), *pañcaloha* (the five base metals; namely, silver, copper, iron, tin, lead), *mala* (the ores or corroded forms of the base metals), *sikatā* (sand), *manahśilā* (realgar), *maṇi* (gem or precious stone), *lavaṇa* (salts), *gairika* (red ochre), *añjana* (antimony black), *āla* (yellow orpiment).

(6) Natural waters are classified according to their sources (Table 6).

(7) Diseases are classified as:

- (a) *Nijaśarīradoṣa* (inborn)
- (b) *Āgantuja* (communicated from outside)
- (c) *Mānasa* (mental) (*Sū. 11, 45*).

(8) Poisons are classified into:

- (a) *Jaṅgama viṣa* (venom)
- (b) *Sthāvara viṣa* (vegetable poisons)
- (c) *Garaviṣa* (artificially prepared or mineral poisons) (*Ci. Chap. 23*).

(9) *Kṛmi* (parasites of the body) are classified as:

- (a) *Sahaja* (symbiotic parasites)
- (b) *Puriṣaja* (derived from faeces)
- (c) *Kaphaja* (derived from mucus)
- (d) *Śoṇitaja* (derived from the blood stream)
- (e) *Malaja* (derived from the waste products of the body) (*Sū. Chap. 19*).

TABLE 1

Living Creatures

| Name in Caraka, reference, and synonyms (if any) | English and/or Latin name | Modern classification |
|--|---|-----------------------|
| PRASAHA-VARGA (Sū. 27, 35, 36) | Creatures which grab and tear off their food | |
| 1. AŚVA <i>Syn.:</i> HAYA <i>In.</i> 12, 83 TURAGA <i>Vi.</i> 3, 36 TURANGA <i>Ci.</i> 9, 154 VĀJIN <i>Sū.</i> 1, 104 | Horse (<i>Equus caballus</i>) | Mammal |
| 2. AŚVATARA | Mule | " |
| 3. BABHRU | Large brown mongoose (<i>Herpestes mungo</i>) | " |
| 4. BHĀSA | Bearded vulture (<i>Gypatus barbatus</i>) | Bird |
| 5. CĀSA | Blue jay (<i>Cyanocitta cristata</i>) | " |
| 6. DHUMIKĀ | Owlet (<i>Athene brama</i>) | " |
| 7. DVĪPIN | Panther (<i>Felis pardus</i>) | Mammal |
| 8. GO <i>Syn.:</i> DHENU <i>Ci.</i> 2/3, 3 VRŠA <i>Sū.</i> 12, 18 RŠABHA <i>Ci.</i> 10, 48 JĀRADRAVA <i>Sū.</i> 3, 10 | Cow (<i>Bos taurus</i>) | " |
| 9* GRDHRA | Vulture (<i>Vulture monachus</i>) | Bird |
| 10. JAMBUKA <i>Syn.:</i> ŚRGĀLA <i>Ci.</i> 10, 41 | Jackal (<i>Canis aureus</i>) | Mammal |
| 11. KHARA | Ass (<i>Asinus equidae</i>) | " |
| 12. KULINGAKA | Sparrow hawk (<i>Ploceus bengalensis</i>) | Bird |
| 13. KURARA | Osprey (<i>Pandion heliactis</i>) | " |
| 14. LOPĀKA | Fox (<i>Vulpus bengalensis</i>) | Mammal |
| 15. MADHUHĀ | Honey buzzard (<i>Pernis apivorus</i>) | Bird |
| 16. MĀRJĀRA <i>Syn.:</i> VIDĀLA <i>Ci.</i> 10, 41 | Cat (<i>Felis domesticus</i>) | Mammal |
| 17. MUŚIKA <i>Syn.:</i> MUŚAKA <i>Vi.</i> 3, 7/3 UNDURA <i>Ci.</i> 23, 9 | Mouse (<i>Mus musculus</i>) | Mammal |
| 18. R̥KṢA | Bear (<i>Melusus labiatus</i>) | " |
| 19. ŚAŚAGHNA | Golden eagle (<i>Aquilar chrysaetos</i>) | Bird |
| 20. SIMHA | Lion (<i>Felis leo</i>) | Mammal |
| 21. ŚYENA | Hawk (<i>Accipiter gentilis</i>) | Bird |
| 22. TARAKṢU | Hyena (<i>Hyaena striata</i>) | Mammal |

TABLE I—(Contd.)

| Name in Caraka, reference, and synonyms (if any) | English and/or Latin name | Modern classification |
|---|---|-----------------------|
| 23. ULUKA | Indian horned owl (<i>Bubo bengalensis</i>) | Bird |
| 24. UṢṬRA Syn.: KARABHA Ci. 13, 107 | Camel (<i>Camelus dromedarius</i>) | Mammal |
| 25. VĀNARA | Hanuman or Langur (<i>Semnopithecus entellus</i>) and other Indian monkeys (<i>Semnopithecus</i>) | " |
| 26. VĀNTADA Syn.: ŚVAN Ci. 10, 41 | Dog (<i>Canis familiaris</i>) | Mammal |
| 27. VĀYASA Syn.: KĀKA Ci. 23, 47 | Crow (<i>Corvus splendens</i>) | Bird |
| 28. VRKA | Wolf (<i>Canis lupus</i>) | Mammal |
| 29. VYĀGHRA Syn.: ŚĀRDŪLA Ci. 23, 192 | Tiger (<i>Felis tigris</i>) | " |
| BHŪMIŚAYA-VARGA Sū. 27, 37, 38 | Burrowing animals | |
| 1. BHEKA Syn.: MAṆḌŪKA Ci. 23, 9 | Frog (<i>Rana</i>) | Amphibia |
| 2. CILLATA | Water shrew (<i>Neomys fodiens</i>) | Mammal |
| 3. CITRAPRASTHA KĀKULIMṚGA | Reticulated python (<i>Python reticulatus</i>) | Reptile |
| 4. GAṆḌAKA | Gecko lizard (<i>Gekkonida</i>) | " |
| 5. GODHĀ | Iguana lizard (<i>Iguanidae</i>) | " |
| 6. KADALIN | Marmot (<i>Marmota</i>) | Mammal |
| 7. KRṢṆAKĀKULIMṚGA | Black python (<i>Python molurus</i>) | Reptile |
| 8. KURCIKĀ | Hedge-hog (<i>Erinaceus europaeus</i>) | Mammal |
| 9. NAKULA | Small mongoose (<i>Herpestes mungo</i>) | " |
| 10. ŚALLAKA | Porcupine (<i>Acanthion leucura</i>) | " |
| 11. ŚVĀVIT | Pangolin (<i>Manis pentadactyl</i>) | " |
| 12. ŚVETAKĀKULIMṚGA | White python (<i>Python molurus</i>) | Reptile |
| 13. ŚYĀMAKĀKULIMṚGA | Dark grey python (<i>Python molurus</i>) | " |
| ANUPA-VARGA Sū. 27, 39 | Creatures that dwell in marshy and wet lands | |
| 1. CAMARA | Yak (<i>Poephagus grumnicus</i>) | Mammal |
| 2. GAJA Syn.: HASTIN Sū. 1, 102 KUṆJARA Ci. 10, 40 | Elephant (<i>Elaphus indicus</i>) | " |
| 3. GAVAYA | Goyal ox (<i>Bos frontalis</i>) | " |

TABLE I—(Contd.)

| Name in Caraka, reference, and synonyms (if any) | English and/or Latin name | Modern classification |
|--|---|-----------------------|
| 4. KHAṆGA | Rhinoceros (<i>Rhinoceros unicornis</i>) | Mammal |
| 5. MAHIṢA Syn.: RAKTĀKṢA Cī. 4, 4 | Buffalo (<i>Bos bubalus</i>) | " |
| 6. NYĀṆKU | Hog deer (<i>Cervus porcinus</i>) | " |
| 7. RURŪ | Swamp deer (<i>Rucervus durancelli</i>) | " |
| 8. ŚRMĀRA | Indian wild boar (<i>Sus cristatus</i>) | " |
| 9. VARĀHA | Pig (<i>Sus scrofa</i>) | " |
| VĀRIṢA-VARGA Sū. 27, 40 | Creatures that live under water | |
| 1. CULUKI | Porpoisc (<i>Neomeris phocaenoides</i>) | Mammal |
| 2. KARKATAKA Syn.: UGGITIṆGA Cī. 23, 153 | Crab (<i>Brachyura</i>) | Crustacea |
| 3. KUMBHĪRA Syn.: NAKRA Cī. 2/2, 10 | Gharial crocodile (<i>Crocodylus porosus</i>) | Reptile |
| 4. KŪRMA Syn.: KACGHAPA Cī. 2/2, 10 | Tortoise or turtle (<i>Chelonia</i>) | " |
| 5. MAKARA | Capricorn (Sea monster ?) | |
| 6. MATSYA | Fish (<i>Pisces</i>) | Fish |
| 7. ŚĀṆKHA | Conch snail (<i>Gastropoda</i>) | Gastropoda |
| 8. ŚĪSUMĀRA | Dolphin (<i>Dolphinus gangetica</i>) | Mammal |
| 9. ŚUKTI | Pearl oyster (<i>Margaritifera</i>) | Mollusca |
| 10. TIMIṆGILA | Whale (<i>Cetacea</i>) | Mammal |
| AMBUCĀRI-VARGA Sū. 27, 41-44 | Creatures that live around, or on the surface of, water | |
| 1. AMBUKUKKUṬĪ | Moor hen (<i>Gallinula chloropus</i>) | Bird |
| 2. ĀRĀ | Avocet (<i>Recurvirostra avosetta</i>) | " |
| 3. BALĀKĀ | Crane (<i>Ardea nivea</i>) | " |
| 4. CAKRAVĀKA | Ruddy sheldrake (<i>Anas cascara</i>) | " |
| 5. HAṂSA Syn.: DHĀRTARĀṢTRA Sū. 27, 85 | Swan (<i>Cygnus olor</i>) | " |
| 6. KADAMBA | Grey-leg goose (<i>Anser anser</i>) | " |
| 7. KĀKATUṆḌAKA | River tern (<i>Sterna hirundo</i>) | " |
| 8. KĀMAKĀLI | Tropic bird (<i>Phaethon rubricauda</i>) | " |
| 9. KĀRAṆḌAVA | White-fronted goose (<i>Anser albifrons</i>) | " |
| 10. KEŚĀRIN | Curlew (<i>Oedienemus crepitans</i>) | " |

TABLE I—(Contd.)

| Name in Caraka, reference, and synonyms (if any) | English and/or Latin name | Modern classification |
|---|---|-----------------------|
| 11. KRAUṢCA | Demoiselle crane (<i>Anthropoides virgo</i>) | Bird |
| 12. MADGU | Small cormorant (<i>Phalacrocorus pygmaeus</i>) | " |
| 13. MAṆITUṆḌAKA | Oyster-catcher (<i>Haematopus ostralegus</i>) | " |
| 14. MEGHARĀVA | Trumpeteer swan (<i>Cygnus buccinator</i>) | " |
| 15. MRṆĀLAKAṆṬHA | Snake-bird (<i>Plotus anginga</i>) | " |
| 16. NANDĪMUKHA | Flamingo (<i>Phoenicopterus roseus</i>) | " |
| 17. PĀKAHAṂSA | Mute swan (<i>Cygnus olor</i>) | " |
| 18. PLAVA | Pelican (<i>Pelicanus onocrotalus</i>) | " |
| 19. PUṢKARĀVYA | Lily trotter (<i>Ardea sibirica</i>) | " |
| 20. PUṆḌARĪKĀKṢA | White-eyed pochard (<i>Nyroca ferina</i>) | " |
| 21. RAKTAŚĪRṢAKA | Purple heron (<i>Ardea purpurea</i>) | " |
| 22. ROHIṆĪ | Common teal (<i>Anas crecia</i>) | " |
| 23. SAHACĀRIN | Petrel (<i>Oceanitidae</i>) | " |
| 24. ŚĀRARA | Skimmer bird (<i>Rhynchops</i>) | " |
| 25. SĀRASA | Indian crane (<i>Megalornis grus</i>) | " |
| 26. SUMUKHA | Mandarin duck (<i>Anas galericulata</i>) | " |
| 27. UTKOṢA | Mallard (<i>Anas platyrhynchos</i>) | " |
| 28. VAKA | Heron (<i>Ardea goliath</i>) | " |
| 29. VĀTĪ | Little grebe (<i>Podiceps ruficellus</i>) | " |
| JAṆGALA-VARGA Sū. 27, 45, 46 | Herbivorous animals living in grasslands or forests | |
| 1. CĀRUṢKA | Gazelle (<i>Gazelle bennetti</i>) | Mammal |
| 2. EṆA | Fawn deer (<i>Cervus rusa</i>) | " |
| 3. GOKARṆA | Cow-eared deer (<i>Antelope picta</i>) | " |
| 4. HARĪṆA | Black buck (<i>Antelope cervicapra</i>) | " |
| 5. KĀLAPUCCHAKA Syn.: ĀSITAPUCCHAKA Cī. 14, 138 | Black-tailed deer (<i>Odocoileus</i> ?) | " |
| 6. KOṬṬAKĀRAKA | Barking deer (<i>Cervus muntjak</i>) | Mammal |
| 7. KRṢṆA | Musk deer (<i>Moschus moschiferus</i>) | " |
| 8. KURĀṄGA | Indian antelope (<i>Antelope cervicapra</i>) | " |
| 9. MRGAMĀTRKĀ | Red deer ? (<i>Cervus elaphus</i>) | " |
| 10. PRṢATA | Spotted deer (<i>Cervus axis</i>) | " |
| 11. RĀMA | Kashmir red deer (<i>Cervus elaphus</i>) | " |
| 12. SAMBHARA | Sambhar (<i>Cervus unicolor</i>) | " |
| 13. ŚĀRABHA | Wapiti (<i>Cervus canadensis</i> ?) | " |

TABLE I—(Contd.)

| Name in Caraka, reference, and synonyms (if any) | English and/or Latin name | Modern classification |
|--|--|-----------------------|
| 14. ŚAŚA | Hare or rabbit (<i>Leporidae</i>) | Mammal |
| 15. ŚVADAMŚTR | Mouse deer (<i>Tregulus meminna</i>) | " |
| 16. URAṆA | Orial or wild sheep (<i>Ovis vignei</i>) | " |
| 17. VARAPOTA | Small antelope (<i>Antilope cervicapra</i>) | " |
| VIṢKIRA-VARGA Sū. 27, 47, 49 | Birds that scatter their food | Gallinaceous birds |
| 1. AVAKARA Syn.: MAYŪRA Sū. 26, 84 ŚIKHIN Sū. 27, 58 BARHIN Ci. 23, 182 | Peacock or pea-fowl (<i>Pavo cristatus</i>) | Bird |
| 2. CAKORA | Greek pheasant (<i>Perdix rufa</i>) | " |
| 3. GIRIVARTAKA | Mountain quail (<i>Coturnix coturnix</i>) | " |
| 4. GONARDA | Hill partridge (<i>Ardea sibirica</i>) | " |
| 5. INDRĀBHA | Hedge sparrow (<i>Leucocerea aureola</i>) | " |
| 6. KAṆKA | Heron (<i>Ardeidae</i>) | " |
| 7. KAPIṆJALA | Black partridge (<i>Francolinus vulgaris</i>) | " |
| 8. KRAKARA | Snipe (<i>Ardea virago</i>) | " |
| 9. KUKKUBHA | Crow pheasant (<i>Coccyzus</i>) | " |
| 10. KUKKUṬA Syn.: CARAṆĀYUDHA Sū. 7, 11 DAKṢA Śi. 10, 11 TĀMRACUḌA Ci. 2/2, 28 | Red-spur fowl (<i>Galloperdix spadicea</i>) | " |
| 11. LAVA | Bustard quail (<i>Turnix suscitatus</i>) | " |
| 12. RAKTAVARTMAKA | Red jungle fowl (<i>Gallus ferruginous</i>) | " |
| 13. SĀRAPADA | Stork (<i>Ciconia boycinia</i>) | " |
| 14. TITTIRI | Gray partridge (<i>Arborophila torquata</i>) | " |
| 15. UPACAKRA | Smaller Greek pheasant (<i>Perdix rufa</i>) | " |
| 16. VARAPADA | Spoon-bill (<i>Platela leucorodia</i>) | " |
| 17. VARTAKA | Indian button quail (<i>Turnix indica</i>) | " |
| 18. VARTIKĀ | Bush quail (<i>Coturnix sylvatica</i>) | " |
| 19. VARTIRAKA | Rain quail (<i>Coturnix coromandelica</i>) | " |
| PRATUDA-VARGA Sū. 27, 50-52 | Birds that peck and gobble their food | Bird |
| 1. ANGĀRACŪḌAKA | Black bulbul (<i>Microscelsis psaroides</i>) | " |
| 2. ATYUHA | Red-vented bulbul (<i>Molpastes haemorrhous</i>) | " |
| 3. BABHRU-VATAHĀ | Brown tree-pie (<i>Dendrocitta rufa</i>) | " |
| 4. BHRṆGARĀJA | Shrike (<i>Lanidae</i>) | " |
| 5. CĀTAKA Syn.: KULINGA Śi. 12, 19/1 | Tree sparrow (<i>Passer montanus</i>) | " |

TABLE I—(Contd.)

| Name in Caraka, reference, and synonyms (if any) | English and/or Latin name | Modern classification |
|---|---|-----------------------|
| 6. CIRAṬI | Babbler (<i>Timelidae</i>) | Bird |
| 7. DIṆḌIMĀNAKA | Toucan (<i>Ramphastos piscivorous</i>) | ,, |
| 8. DUNDUBHI | Grey hornbill (<i>Lophoceros birostris</i>) | ,, |
| 9. GOPAPUTRA | Cow-bird (<i>Molothrus</i>) | ,, |
| 10. JAṬI | Indian hoopoe (<i>Upupa indica</i>) | ,, |
| 11. JIVAJIVAKA Syn.: JIVANJIVA In. 12, 75 | Peacock pheasant (<i>Chalcurus</i>) | ,, |
| 12. KAIRĀTA | Red-faced malkoha (<i>Pheanicophaes pyrrhocephalus</i>) | ,, |
| 13. KALĀVINKA | House sparrow (<i>Passer domesticus</i>) | ,, |
| 14. KAṆKU | Blossom-headed parakeet (<i>Torquatus rosa</i>) | ,, |
| 15. KAPOTA | Spotted pigeon (<i>Chalephaps indica</i>) | ,, |
| 16. KOKILA Syn.: VĀSANTAKA Ci. 14, 56 | Indian koel (<i>Endynamis honorata</i>) | ,, |
| 17. KOJAṢṬHI | Green-bill coucal (<i>Centropus chlorhynchus</i>) | ,, |
| 18. KULINGAKA | Weaver bird (sparrow hawk) (<i>Ploceus bengalensis</i>) | ,, |
| 19. LAṬṬAŚĀKA | Paradise flycatcher (<i>Muscicapidae techitrea</i>) | ,, |
| 20. LAṬVĀ | Pied flycatcher (<i>Muscicapidae atricapilla</i>) | ,, |
| 21. LOHAPRṢṬA | King-fisher (<i>Alcedo ispida</i>) | ,, |
| 22. PĀKKĀRA | Green barbet (<i>Thereiceryx zeylonicus</i>) | ,, |
| 23. PĀṆḌANAVIKA | Wood pigeon (<i>Columba palumbas</i>) | ,, |
| 24. PĀRĀVATA | Pigeon (<i>Columba treron</i>) | ,, |
| 25. PRIYĀTMAJA | Indian babbler (<i>Argya caudata</i>) | ,, |
| 26. SĀRAṄGA | Ringneck parakeet (<i>Palaeonis torquatus</i>) | ,, |
| 27. ŚĀRIKĀ | Mynah (<i>Turdus salica</i>) | ,, |
| 28. ŚATAPATRA | Black wood-pecker (<i>Picus martius</i>) | ,, |
| 29. ŚUKA | Green parakeet (<i>Psittacula spengeli</i>) | ,, |
| 30. YAṢṬHIKĀ | Sun bird (<i>Nectarinidae</i>) | ,, |
| KṚMI-VARGA Sū. 19, 4/9 (a) <i>Living in the body excretions</i> | Parasites inhabiting the living body | Nematoda |
| 1. YŪKĀ | | |
| 2. PIPĪLIKĀ (b) <i>Living in the blood</i> | | |
| 3. AUDUMBARA | | |
| 4. JANTUMĀTĀRA | | |

TABLE I—(Contd.)

| Name in Caraka, reference, and synonyms (if any) | English and/or Latin name | Modern classification |
|--|--|-----------------------|
| 5. KEŚADA | | |
| 6. LOMADA | | |
| 7. LOMADVĪPA | | |
| 8. SAURASA | | |
| (c) <i>Living in the mucus and phlegm</i> | | |
| 9. ANTRADA | | |
| 10. CURU | | |
| 11. DARBHA-PUŚPA | | |
| 12. HRDAYADA | | |
| 13. MAHĀGUDA | | |
| 14. SAUGANDHIKA | | |
| 15. UDARAVEŚṬA | | |
| (d) <i>Living in the faeces</i> | | |
| 16. KAKERUKA | | |
| 17. LELIHA | | |
| 18. MAKERUKA | | |
| 19. SAŚULAKA | | |
| 20. SAUSURADA | | |
| GOMĀYU-VARGA Ci. 23, 9, 10 | Creatures with poisonous fangs or stings | |
| 1. ĀKHU | Rat (<i>Mus rattus</i>) | Mammal |
| 2. ĀŚIVIṢA | Snake (<i>Ophidia</i>) | Reptile |
| 3. JALAUKAS | Leech (<i>Hirunidae</i>) | Chaetopoda |
| 4. KṚKĀṆṬAKA | A type of scorpion (<i>Palamnaeus</i>) | Arachnida |
| 5. KUḌYAKIṬAKA | Wall lizard (<i>Lacerta muralis</i>) | Reptile |
| 6. LUTĀ | Spider (<i>Lycosidae</i>) | Arachnida |
| 7. MAṆḌŪKA | Frog (<i>Rana</i>) | Amphibia |
| 8. MATSYA | Fish (<i>Pisces</i>) | Pisces |
| 9. NAKULA | Mongoose (<i>Herpestes mungo</i>) | Mammal |
| 10. PATANĠA | Flying insects | Hymenoptera & Diptera |
| 11. ŚĀRDŪLA | Tiger (<i>Felis tigris</i>) | Mammal |
| 12. ŚATAPADĪ | Centipede (<i>Chilopoda</i>) | Arthropoda |
| 13. SIMHA | Lion (<i>Felis leo</i>) | Mammal |
| 14. STHAGIKĀ MAKṢIKĀ | Hornet or wasp (<i>Vespa</i>) | Hymenoptera |

TABLE I—(Contd.)

| Name in Caraka, reference, and synonyms (if any) | English and/or Latin name | Modern classification |
|---|--|-----------------------|
| 15. ŠVAN | Dog (<i>Canis familiaris</i>) | Mammal |
| 16. TARAKŠU | Hyena (<i>Hyaena striatus</i>) | " |
| 17. VIŠVAMBHARA | Scorpion (<i>Palamnaeus</i>) | Arachnida |
| SARPA-VARGA <i>Sū.</i> 27, 213 | Snakes (<i>Ophidia</i>) | Reptiles |
| SARPA <i>Syn.:</i> AHI <i>Ci.</i> 10, 31 URAGA <i>Ci.</i> 27, 31 AŚVIŠA <i>Ci.</i> 13, 9 | | |
| 1. BHUJAGAPATI <i>Ci.</i> 23, 99 | King cobra (<i>Naja bungarus</i>) | " |
| 2. DARVIKARA-SARPA <i>Ci.</i> 23, 124 | Viper (<i>Bitis echis</i>) | " |
| 3. GODHERAKA-SARPA <i>Ci.</i> 23, 134 | Hybrid of the snake and the iguana (?) | " |
| 4. GONASA-SARPA <i>Ci.</i> 23, 136 | ? | " |
| 5. KṚṢṆASARPA <i>Ci.</i> 23, 124 | A kind of poisonous snake | " |
| 6. MAṆDALI-SARPA <i>Ci.</i> 23, 124 | Indian cobra (<i>Naja tripudiana</i>) | " |
| 7. PATRAGA <i>Ci.</i> 23, 84 | Tree-snake (<i>Chrysopelia ornate</i>) | " |
| 8. RAJIMAN-SARPA <i>Ci.</i> 23, 124 | Striped snake with spots on its body | " |
| 9. TAKŠAKA <i>Ci.</i> 23, 195 | <i>Trimeresurus gramineus</i> ? | " |
| UNCLASSIFIED | | |
| 1. AJA <i>Sū.</i> 2, 93 <i>Syn.:</i> BASTA <i>Sū.</i> 25, 39 CHĀGA <i>Ci.</i> 23, 77 | Goat (<i>Capra hircus</i>) | Mammal |
| 2. AVI <i>Syn.:</i> ĀVIKA <i>Sū.</i> 27, 223 MEŠA <i>Ci.</i> 17, 116 URABHRA <i>Sū.</i> 6, 43 | Sheep (<i>Ovis</i>) | " |
| 3. DVĪKAKUDA <i>Ci.</i> 14, 207 | Two-humped camel (<i>Camelus bactrianus</i>) | " |
| 4. GAṆḌUPADA <i>Ci.</i> 8, 151 | Earthworm (<i>Lumbicidae</i>) | Annelida |
| 5. JĀTUKA <i>Ci.</i> 24, 48 | Lac insect (<i>Coccus lacca</i>) | Coccifera |
| 6. MADHUMAKŠIKĀ <i>Sū.</i> 5, 43 | Honey bee (<i>Apis indica</i>) | Hymenoptera |
| 7. MADHU-BHRAMARA <i>Sū.</i> 27, 243 | Black honey-bee (<i>Apis dorsata</i>) | " |
| 8. MAKŠIKĀ <i>Ci.</i> 20, 29 | House-fly (<i>Musca domestica</i>) | Diptera |
| 9. MĀNUŠA <i>Sū.</i> 27, 224 | Man (<i>Homo sapiens</i>) | Mammal |
| 10. MAŠAKA <i>In.</i> 2, 21 | Mosquito (<i>Culicidae</i>) | Diptera |
| 11. MATSYAKA <i>Śā.</i> 8, 19 | Silver-fish (<i>Lepisma saccharina</i>) | Thysanura |
| 12. PĪPĪLIKĀ <i>Ci.</i> 23, 187 | Ant (<i>Formicoida</i>) | Hymenoptera |
| 13. RĀJAHAMSA <i>Sū.</i> 12, 18/1 | Royal Chinese swan (<i>Cygnus cygnoides</i>) | Bird |
| 14. VĀSTRAKṚMI <i>Ci.</i> 23, 100 | Cloth-worm (<i>Tinea</i>) | Lepidoptera |
| 15. YŪKĀ <i>Vi.</i> 7, 10 | Body and head louse (<i>Pediculus</i>) | Anoplura |

TABLE 2
Medicinal Substances of *Animal Origin and their Uses*

| Name and synonyms in Caraka, with references | English equivalent | Mode of use or application | Medicinal uses in |
|---|------------------------|--|---|
| 1. AHI Cī. 10, 51 | Snake | Inhalation of the fumes when burnt | Epilepsy |
| 2. AHI-PURĪṢA Cī. 10, 51 | Snake-dung | As above | Insanity |
| 3. AJĀ-KṢĪRA Cī. 5, 133; 8, 116; 11, 50; 19, 84; 25, 40; 29, 53, 133 | Goat's milk | (a) External—in ointment (b) Internal—in diet (c) Internal—in medicated ghee (d) Internal—as ingredient of sweetened jelly | (a) Inflammation (b) Fever, enlarged spleen (c) Debility, haemothermia, etc. (d) Blood dysentery |
| 4. AJA-MĀMṢA Cī. 11, 83; 18, 44; Kā. 1, 28 Syn.: CHĀGA-MĀMṢA Cī. 23, 67 | Goat's flesh | (a) Local application for absorption of venoms (b) Internal—as soup in diet (c) Internal—as ingredient of ghee (d) Internal—the meat juice used in prescription | (a) Poisonous bites (b) Wasting diseases (c) Spleen disease; pain in the groin and pelvis (d) Anaemia, fistula, internal worms |
| 5. AJA-MEDAS Sū. 25, 38; Cī. 11, 27 | Goat's fat | Internal—in diet | Debility |
| 6. AJĀ-MŪTRA Sū. 1, 93, 100; Cī. 30, 80 | Urine of the she-goat | (a) External—for local massage (b) External—in medicated oil for local application (c) Internal—as drink | (a) Diseases of the spleen and stomach; piles, poisonous bites (b) Vaginal disorders (c) Jaundice, excessive bile secretion |
| 7. AJA-RUDHIRA Cī. 19, 74; 30, 101; Sū. 6, 82; 10, 41 | Goat's blood | (a) As ingredient of enema (b) Internal—ingredient of liquid mixture | (a) Colic pain (b) Dysentery, vomiting, fainting, amenorrhoea |
| 8. ĀKHU-MĀMṢA Cī. 23, 100, 147; 26, 175 Syn.: MŪṢIKA-MĀMṢA Sū. 12, 18/5 | Flesh of mouse and rat | (a) As ingredient of enema (b) Internal—as ingredient of medicinal ghee | (a) Acute constipation, retention of urine (b) Diseases of the head |
| 9. AŚVA-KARĪṢA Sū. 14, 26, 60; Vī. 7, 22; Cī. 14, 41; 17, 116, 130, 134 | Horse-dung | (a) External—as fumigant (b) External—in poultices (c) Internal—in decoction (d) Internal—as juice in mixture | (a) As diaphoretic (b) & (c) Piles (d) Haemothermia, hiccup |
| 10. AŚVĀ-KṢĪRA Cī. 11, 83 | Mare's milk | As diet | Consumption |

TABLE 2: MEDICINAL SUBSTANCES OF ANIMAL ORIGIN

39

| | | | |
|--|--------------------------------|---|--|
| 11. AVI-ŚONITA <i>Ci.</i> 30, 101; <i>Sū.</i> 10, 41 <i>Syn.</i> : MEŚA-RAKTA <i>Ci.</i> 19, 40 | Sheep's blood | (a) As ingredient of rectal enema (b) Internal—in mixtures | (a) Haemorrhage (b) Amenorrhoea |
| 12. AVI-MŪTRA <i>Sū.</i> 1, 93, 100; <i>Ci.</i> 10, 48; 26, 185 | Sheep's urine | (a) External—in nasal medication (b) External—in eye application (c) Internal—in infusion Burnt for fumigation | (a) Diseases of the head (b) Epilepsy, insanity (c) Imbalance of the humors As vermicide and general disinfectant |
| 13. BALĀKĀ-ASTHI <i>Ci.</i> 23, 98 | Bones of the crane | Inhalation of the fumes when burnt | Oedema, toxicosis, poisonous bites |
| 14. BHUJAGAPATI-ŚIRṢA <i>Ci.</i> 23, 99 | Hood of the king cobra | (a) External—extract of the flesh and marrow as ingredient of nutritive enema (b) Internal—as soup in diet | (a) Fever, debility (b) Debility, anaemia, fevers, female diseases |
| 15. CAKORA <i>Ci.</i> 2/1, 46; 3, 190; 23, 110; <i>Sū.</i> 12, 19/1 | Greek partridge | (a) Internal—in diet (b) Internal—as ingredient of mixture | (a) Seminal weakness (b) Profuse bleeding |
| 16. CAKORA-ANḌA <i>Sū.</i> 27, 85; <i>Ci.</i> 11, 25 | Eggs of the Greek partridge | Internal—in diet | Fever, haemorrhage |
| 17. CARAṆĀYUDHA-MĀMṢA <i>Ci.</i> 3, 197 | Fowl's flesh | (a) External—skin, bones and feathers burnt for fumigation (b) Internal—in diet | (a) Congestion of the respiratory tract (b) Consumption |
| 18. CĀSA <i>Am.</i> 12, 76; <i>Ci.</i> 8, 150; 17, 118 | The blue jay | Internal—in diet | Seminal weakness, cough, cardiac disorders |
| 19. CATĀKA-ANḌA <i>Sū.</i> 27, 86 | Sparrow's egg | (a) Ingredient of nutritive enema (b) Internal—in diet | (a) Rheumatism, debility, female diseases, etc. (b) Sexual debility, general weakness |
| 20. CATĀKA-MĀMṢA <i>Sū.</i> 27, 85; <i>Ci.</i> 2/2, 10; 2/4, 6; <i>Sū.</i> 12, 18/8, 19/1 | Flesh of the sparrow | Internal—in diet | Profuse bleeding |
| 21. DAKṢA-ANḌA <i>Ci.</i> 11, 25 | Egg of the common fowl | (a) External—local application (b) External—in ointment | (a) Suppurated swellings (b) Piles |
| 22. DAKṢA-MĀLA <i>Ci.</i> 25, 53 <i>Syn.</i> : KUKKUTA-SAKṚT <i>Ci.</i> 14, 54 | Droppings of the common fowl | (a) External—local application for absorption of venom (b) Internal—in diet (c) Internal—the meat juice in diet | (a) Poisonous bites (b) Acute constipation, jaundice, dysentery, etc. (c) Bleeding piles, sexual debility |
| 23. DAKṢA-MĀMṢA <i>Ci.</i> 8, 66, 158; 11, 25 <i>Syn.</i> : KUKKUTA-MĀMṢA <i>Ci.</i> 2/1, 48; 23, 67 | Flesh of the common fowl | Internal—in mixture | Amenorrhoea, fainting, diarrhoea, etc. |
| 24. DAKṢA-ŚONITA <i>Sū.</i> 10, 41 | Blood of the common fowl | Internal—as soup in diet | Seminal weakness, pulmonary weakness |
| 25. DHĀRTARĀṢTRA-MĀMṢA <i>Sū.</i> 27, 85 | Flesh of the black-legged swan | | |

TABLE 2
Medicinal Substances of Animal Origin and their Uses—(Contd.)

| Name and synonyms in Caraka, with references | English equivalent | Mode of use or application | Medicinal uses in |
|---|---|---|--|
| 26. DVĪKAKUĀDA-RASA Cī. 14, 207 | Meat-juice of the two-humped camel | Internal—in diet | Bleeding piles |
| 27. DVĪŚAPHA-CARMAN, KṢURA, ŚRĪGA Cī. 17, 118 | The skin, hooves and horns of cloven-footed animals | Inhalation of the fumes when burnt | Congestion of the respiratory tract |
| 28. EKASĀPHA-PAYAS Śr. 27, 221 | Milk of solidungulate animals | Internal—in diet | General weakness |
| 29. ENA-MĀMSA Śr. 5, 5; 6, 43; 13, 11; 15, 7; 22, 25; 27, 46, 271; Śr. 8, 24; Cī. 5, 191; 4, 41; 19, 50; 23, 226; 24, 138 | Flesh of the antelope | Internal—as soup in diet | Fever, emaciation, debility, constipation, toxicosis, etc. |
| 30. ENA-ŚONITA Cī. 19, 74; 30, 101; Śr. 6, 82; 10, 41 | Blood of the antelope | (a) Ingredient of rectal enema (b) Internal—in mixture | (a) Colic pain (b) Amenorrhoea, nactæa, fainting, collapse, etc. |
| 31. GAJA-ASTHI Cī. 14, 55 | Elephant's bones | External—the powder as ingredient of ointment | Piles |
| 32. GAJA-MĀMSA Cī. 2/2, 29; 6, 8, 154; 9, 82; 14, 56; 17, 116; 18, 20; 23, 119 | Elephant's flesh | Internal—in diet | Debility |
| 33. GAJAMUKTIKA Cī. 23, 252 | ? | Worn as talisman | Antidote for poisonous bites |
| 34. GAJA-SAKRT Cī. 17, 116 Syn.: KUNJARA-PURIŚA Cī. 14, 51 | Elephant's dung | (a) Inhalation of the fumes when burnt (b) Internal—the aqueous extract taken with honey | (a) Epilepsy (b) Increase of phlegm or bile |
| 35. GAṆḌUPADA Cī. 8, 151 | Earth-worms | Internal—in diet, after frying in ghee | Consumption |
| 36. GO-CARMAN Cī. 9, 49 | Cow-hide | Internal—ashes, made ingredient of medicinal ghee | Insanity |
| 37. GODHĀ-MĀMSA Śr. 2, 33; 27, 38, 70; Cī. 7, 88; 12, 62; 14, 126; 23, 134, 186; Śr. 12, 18/5 | Flesh of the iguana | (a) External—local application for absorption of venom (b) Ingredient of nutritive enema (c) External—the meat juice as skin lotion (d) Internal—as soup in diet | (a) Poisonous bites (b) Major wounds, fractures, misperistalsis (c) Persistent skin diseases (d) Rheumatic conditions, debility |

TABLE 2: MEDICINAL SUBSTANCES OF ANIMAL ORIGIN

| | | | |
|---|----------------------|---|---|
| 38. GO-KṢĪRA Śā. 1, 106; Śā. 8, 24 Syn.: GO-PAYAS Gi. 2/1, 35, etc.; Śi. 10, 41 | Cow's milk | (a) External—in medicated oil (b) External—in ointment (c) Ingredient of nutritive enema (d) Internal—in diet (e) Internal—in mixture (f) Internal—in medicated ghee (g) Internal—in linctus (h) Internal—ingredient of candied sweets | (a) Burns, stiffness, etc. (b) Dislocation, fractures, etc. (c) Anaemia, amenorrhoea (d) Debility, spleen diseases (e) Jaundice, consumption, etc. (f) Menstrual disorders, tendency to abortion (g) and (h) Heart diseases, excessive bile secretion, etc. |
| 39. GO-MĀMSA Śā. 5, 11; 25, 39, etc.; Gi. 6, 24; 8, 185, etc. | Flesh of the cow | (a) External—local application for absorption of venom (b) Internal—as soup in diet | (a) Poisonous bites (b) Rheumatic fevers, emaciation, consumption |
| 40. GO-MŪTRA Śā. 1, 93; 3, 13, etc.; Vi. 8, 142; Gi. 5, 178, etc.; Kā. 7, 13, etc.; Śi. 8, 18, etc. | Urine of the cow | (a) External—as lotion (b) External—in ointment (c) Internal—as drink (d) Internal—in medicated ghee | (a) Skin diseases (b) Pruritus, snake-bites, etc. (c) Jaundice, leucoderma, etc. (d) Insanity, epilepsy, etc. |
| 41. GO-ŚAKRT Śā. 14, 26; Śā. 8, 10; Gi. 4, 68; 7, 48; 25, 116 | Cow-dung | (a) External—burnt for fumigation (b) External—ingredient of poultice (c) Internal—in medicated ghee (d) Internal—as aqueous extract with honey, etc. | (a) As diaphoretic (b) Skin lesions (c) Piles (d) Piles, poisoning, oedema, spleen diseases, etc. |
| 42. GO-SARPIS Śā. 25, 38, 40; Gi. 2/2, 11; 2/4, 25 | Cow's fat | Internal—in diet | Debility, rheumatism |
| 43. GO-ŚRNGA Gi. 17, 79 | Cow's horns | Inhalation of the fumes when burnt | Accumulation of phlegm |
| 44. GO-SNĀYU Gi. 17, 79 | Cow's sinews | Inhalation of the fumes when burnt | Congestion of the respiratory tract |
| 45. GRDHRA-MĀMSA Gi. 8, 150; 10, 51 | Vulture's flesh | (a) Inhalation of the burning fumes (b) Internal—in diet | (a) Insanity (b) Consumption |
| 46. GRDHRA-PAKSA Gi. 10, 51 | Wings of the vulture | Inhalation of the burning fumes | Insanity |
| 47. HĀMSA-ANDA Gi. 2/1, 49; Śi. 12, 7, 19 | Swan's egg | Ingredient of nutritive enema | Fever, weakness, scallity, gradual loss of sense perceptions |
| 48. HĀMSA-MĀMSA Śā. 13, 83; 27, 41, 66; Gi. 2/1, 41, 48; 2/2, 10; 6, 24; 8, 158; 23, 253; 26, 175 | Flesh of the swan | (a) Internal—in diet (b) Internal—the meat-juice in diet (c) Internal—as ingredient of medicinal ghee | (a) Sallow complexion, emaciation (b) General weakness (c) Diseases of the head |
| 49. HARINA-MĀMSA Śā. 8, 24; Gi. 3, 191; 4, 41; 14, 201; 19, 50; 23, 226 | Venison | Internal—in diet | Fever, haemorrhage, diarrhoea, habitual constipation, toxic condition |

TABLE 2
Medicinal Substances of Animal Origin and their Uses—(Contd.)

| Name and synonyms in Caraka, with references | English equivalent | Mode of use or application | Medicinal uses in |
|--|---|--|--|
| 50. HASTINI-MŪTRA Śā. 1, 102; Ci. 7, 169 | Urine of the she-elephant | (a) External—as lotion (b) Internal—as drink | (a) Leucoderma (b) Dermatitis, helminthiasis |
| 51. HASTINI-PAYAS Śā. 27, 223 | Elephant's milk | Internal—in diet | Debility |
| 52. JALAUKĀS Ci. 14, 61; 21, 69, 119; 29, 36, 37 | Leech | Local application of the living creatures for blood-letting | Piles, vitiated blood, rheumatism of the joints |
| 53. JAMBUKA-MŪTRA, PĪTTA, KARĪṢA, NAKHA, CARMAN Ci. 10, 51 | Urine, bile, dung, nails and hide of the jackal | (a) Inhalation of the burning fumes (b) External—in making ointment | (a) Epilepsy (b) Insanity |
| 54. JAṆḌAKA-CARMAN Ci. 17, 118 | Animal hides | (a) Inhalation of the burning fumes (b) External—powdered ashes in ointment | (a) Hiccup (b) Congestion of phlegm |
| 55. JĀTUKA-VASĀ Ci. 14, 48 | Wax secreted by lac insects | (a) Inhalation of the burning fumes (b) External—local application | (a) & (b) Piles |
| 56. JĪVAJĪVA-ANḌA Śi. 12, 19/1 | Egg of the peacock pheasant | Ingredient of nutritive enema | Debility, pectoral lesions, female diseases, recurrent fevers |
| 57. KAGGHAPA-RASA Ci. 19, 38 | Meat juice of the small tortoise | Internal—in diet | Diarrhoea |
| 58. KĀKA-MĀMSA Ci. 8, 151 | Crow's flesh | (a) Internal—in food (b) Internal—as meat-juice in liquid mixture | (a) Emaciation, consumption (b) Poisonous bites |
| 59. KĀKA-PURĪṢA Ci. 10, 51 | Crow's droppings | Inhalation of the burning fumes | Epilepsy |
| 60. KĀKA-ŚONĪTA Ci. 23, 182 | Crow's blood | External—as local application | Poisonous bites |
| 61. KĀLAPUCCHAKA-MĀMSA Śā. 15, 7; 27, 46; Śā. 8, 24; Ci. 3, 191; 4, 41; 19, 50 | Flesh of the black-tailed deer | (a) Internal—in diet (b) Internal—as ingredient of soup | (a) Fever, haemothermia, tendency to abortion (b) Chronic diarrhoea |
| 62. KALĀVINKA-PURĪṢA Ci. 25, 100 | Droppings of house sparrows | External—for local application | Non-healing wounds with granulation on the surface |

TABLE 2: MEDICINAL SUBSTANCES OF ANIMAL ORIGIN

| | | | |
|--|--------------------------------|---|--|
| 63. KAPŪJĀLA-MĀMSA Sū. 5, 5; 6, 43; 15, 16, etc.; Śā. 8, 24; Cī. 3, 190; 4, 41; 19, 50, etc. | Flesh of the common part-ridge | (a) Internal—in diet (b) Internal—meat-juice used in diet | (a) Vitiated breast-milk, tendency to abortion, etc. (b) Chronic diarrhoea, dysentery |
| 64. KAPOTA-MĀMSA Sū. 26, 84; 27, 52, 73; Cī. 4, 41; 23, 203, 208 | Flesh of the pigeon | Internal—in diet | Excessive urination, haemothermia |
| 65. KAPOTA-PURĪṢA Cī. 23, 207, 208; 25, 53, 100 | Pigeon's droppings | External—for local application | Poisonous bites, suppurations, granulated non-healing wounds |
| 66. KĀRĀNDA-ĀNDA Sū. 27, 41; Śā. 12, 19/2 | Duck's egg | Ingredient of nutritive enema | Sexual debility, pectoral lesion, spleen diseases, female disorder |
| 67. KARKATĀKA-RASA Śi. 12, 18/7 | Crab-meat juice | Ingredient of nutritive enema | Sexual debility |
| 68. KHANGA-MĀMSA Sū. 27, 39, 84; Śā. 8, 62; Cī. 8, 154 | Rhinoceros flesh | Internal—in diet | Emaciation, pallor, etc. |
| 69. KHARA-ASTHI Sū. 27, 35; Śā. 8, 34, 41; Cī. 6, 24; 7, 168 | Bones of the ass | External—the ashes as ingredient of ointment | Leucoderma |
| 70. KHARA-KĀRĪṢA Sū. 14, 26, 60; Cī. 14, 41; 17, 116 | Ass's dung | (a) Inhalation of the fumes when burnt (b) External—in ointment (c) Internal—in infusion with honey | (a) As diaphoretic (b) Piles (c) Hiccup, congestion of phlegm |
| 71. KHARA-MĀMSA Cī. 8, 158 | Ass's flesh | Internal—in diet | Emaciation |
| 72. KHARA-MŪTRA Sū. 1, 104 | Ass's urine | Internal—as drink | Epilepsy, insanity |
| 73. KRAKARA-MĀMSA Sū. 27, 49; Cī. 4, 50 | Snipe's flesh | Internal—in diet | Haemothermia |
| 74. KRAVYĀDA-MĀMSA Sū. 22, 57 | Flesh of carnivorous animals | Internal—in diet | Consumption, piles |
| 75. KRṢṢASARPA-VASĀ Cī. 14, 48; 26, 259 | Fat of the cobra | (a) Inhalation of the fumes when burnt (b) External—as local application | (a) Piles (b) Eye-diseases |
| 76. KṢAUDRA Sū. 6, 39; 7, 61, etc.; Vi. 7, 32; Cī. 1/1, 4, 51; 1/2, 4, etc. | Honey | (a) Internal—as an adjunct in many medicinal prescriptions (b) Internal—in diet | (a) & (b) All diseased and weak conditions |
| 77. KUKKUTA-ĀNDAKAPĀLA Cī. 26, 253 | Shell of the hen's egg | External—as ingredient of ointment | Diseases of the vision, defects of the palate |
| 78. KULĪNGA-ĀNDA Śi. 12, 19/1 | Sparrow's egg | Ingredient of nutritive enema | As in Jivajīva-aṇḍa (No. 56) |
| 79. KUŪJARA-NAKHA Cī. 10, 40 | Elephant's nail | Inhalation of the fumes when burnt | Epilepsy |

TABLE 2
Medicinal Substances of Animal Origin and their Uses—(Contd.)

| Name and synonyms in Caraka, with references | English equivalent | Mode of use or application | Medicinal uses in |
|--|--|---|--|
| 80. KURANGA-RASA Śā. 27, 45; Śā. 8, 24; Cī. 3, 19 | Meat-juice of the antelope | Internal—in diet | Tendency to abortion in pregnancy, fever |
| 81. KURARA-MŪTRA, NAKHA, PITTA, FURIṢA, GANGU, PAKṢA, Cī. 17, 118 | Urine, nails, bile, droppings, beak and feathers of the osprey | (a) Inhalation of the fumes when burnt (b) External—ashes as ingredient of ointment | (a) & (b) Piles |
| 82. KORMA-RASA Śā. 27, 40, 84; Cī. 5, 169; 14, 129 | Meat-juice of the large tortoise | Internal—in diet | Flatulence, rheumatism, etc. |
| 83. KORMA-VASĀ Cī. 28, 128 | Fat of the tortoise | External—as nasal medication | Flatulence, rheumatism, etc. |
| 84. LAKṢĀ (JATU) Cī. 9, 61; 11, 15, etc. | Lac | (a) As fumigator (b) Ingredient of cigars (c) Internal—in mixed decoction (d) Internal—in linctus (e) Internal—in medicated ghee (f) Internal—in pills | (a) As insecticide and vermicide (b) Hiccup, deep-seated phlegm (c) Ulcers and lesions of the thoracic cavity, dysuria, lithiasis, etc. (d) & (e) Toxicosis, skin eruptions, eye diseases, defects of vision, mouth diseases, fistula, etc. (f) Loss of skin pigment |
| 85. LAVA-MĀMSA Śā. 5, 5; 6, 25, etc.; Śā. 8, 24; Cī. 3, 190; 4, 41, etc. | Flesh of the bustard quail | (a) Internal—in diet (b) Internal—the meat-juice as ingredient of soup | (a) Consumption, haemorrhage, tendency to abortion, etc. (b) Acute alcoholism, cardiac and pulmonary diseases, haemoptysis, chronic diarrhoea, etc. |
| 86. LOPĀKA-MĀMSA Śā. 27, 36; Cī. 14, 126, 207 Sym.: SRGĀLA-MĀMSA Cī. 8, 152 | Flesh of the fox | (a) Internal—in diet (b) Internal—the meat-juice in diet | (a) Consumption, emaciation (b) Bleeding piles |
| 87. MADHŪCCHISṬA Śā. 3, 16; Cī. 7, 121; 11, 17, etc. | Bee's wax | (a) Inhalation of burning fumes (b) As medium in cauterization (c) External—in ointment (d) External—in medicinal oil for massage (e) Internal—in mixture (f) Internal—in medicated ghee | (a) Cough, coryza, hiccup, etc. (b) Deep-seated pus (c) Dermatitis, painful wounds (d) Rheumatic pain in joints, fractures and dislocations (e) Pain in hypogastric region (f) Biliousness, haemothermia, etc. |

TABLE 2: MEDICINAL SUBSTANCES OF ANIMAL ORIGIN

| | | | |
|---|---|--|---|
| 88. MAHIṢA-MĀMSA Cī. 2/1, 42; 8, 158, etc.; Śi. 12, 19/2 | Buffalo-meat | (a) The meat-juice as ingredient of nutritive enema (b) Internal—in diet (c) Internal—the meat-juice in diet | (a) Debility, senile decay, female diseases, etc. (b) Consumption, emaciation (c) Sexual debility |
| 89. MAHIṢA-ŚOṆITA Śi. 10, 41 | Buffalo-blood | Ingredient of nutritive enema | Haemorrhage |
| 90. MAHIṢI-DADHI Cī. 26, 88 | Curds from buffalo's milk | Internal—in medicated ghee | Cough, hiccup, anaemia, jaundice, etc. |
| 91. MAHIṢI-KṢĪRA Śā. 25, 40; 27, 219; Cī. 11, 83; 12, 26, etc.; Śi. 10, 40; 12, 19/1 | Buffalo's milk | (a) Ingredient of nutritive enema (b) Internal—to be taken with cow's urine (c) Internal—in medicated ghee (d) Internal—in diet | (a) Seminal weakness, recurrent fever, senile decay, female disorders, etc. (b) Oedema (c) Consumptive cough (d) Insomnia, cough |
| 92. MAHIṢI-MŪTRA Śā. 1, 102; Cī. 13, 151; 15, 181 | Urine of the she-buffalo | (a) Internal—ingredient of liquid mixture (b) Internal—powder prepared by mixing the urine with plants, followed by incineration | (a) Piles, oedema, abdominal diseases (b) Loss of appetite |
| 93. MAHIṢI-GHṚTA Cī. 4, 101; 16, 53, 134; 23, 241 | Buffalo-ghee | (a) External—ingredient of nasal application (b) Internal—ingredient of medicated ghee | (a) Bleeding from the nose (b) Poisonous bites, jaundice, etc. |
| 94. MĀKṢIKA-MADHU Śā. 5, 43; 27, 243, etc.; Cī. 4, 83; 11, 20, etc. | Bee's honey | (a) External—for local application with other ingredients (b) Internal—as an adjunct to many prescriptions | (a) Mouth diseases, sore throat (b) In various diseases |
| 95. MĀKṢIKĀ-VIṢṬHĀ Cī. 17, 132; 30, 325 | Droppings of the house-fly | (a) External—in nasal erhine (b) Internal—as pill | (a) Hiccup (b) Vomiting |
| 96. MĀRJĀRA-MĀMSA Śi. 12, 18/5 | Cat's flesh | The meat-juice as ingredient of nutritive enema | Debility, broken ribs, misperistalsis, retention of urine, etc. |
| 97. MĀRJĀRA-NAKHA, PITTA, CARMAN, LOMAN, MŪTRA, PURIṢA, Cī. 9, 75; 10, 41 | Nails, bile, skin, fur, urine, and droppings of the cat | (a) Inhalation of the fumes (b) External—the ashes as ingredient of eye-ointment (c) External—in nasal medication | (a) & (b) Insanity (c) Epilepsy, insanity |
| 98. MATSYA-ĀMIṢA Śā. 3, 19; 5, 11, etc.; Cī. 17, 74; 24, 124, etc. | Flesh of fishes | (a) External—as warm poultice (b) External—the flesh-juice as ingredient of medicated oil | (a) & (b) Rheumatic conditions (c) Indigestion, intestinal worms, debility |

TABLE 2
Medicinal Substances of Animal Origin and their Uses—(Contd.)

| Name and synonyms in Caraka, with references | English equivalent | Mode of use or application | Medicinal uses in |
|--|--|---|---|
| 99. MATSYA-VASĀ Cī. 25, 76; 28, 128 | Fish oil | (a) External—in nasal medication (b) Internal—as ingredient of jellied sweets | (a) Debility (b) Painful wounds |
| 100. MATSYA-PIṬṬA Cī. 30, 103 | Fish bile | External—for local application | Vaginal tumours |
| 101. MAYŪRA-MĀMSA Śr. 13, 83; Cī. 4, 50; 5, 110; 10, 39; 12, 62, etc. Syn.: SIKHI-MĀMSA Śr. 27, 58; Śā. 8, 28 BARHI-MĀMSA Cī. 8, 150 | Flesh of the peacock | (a) The meat-juice as ingredient of nutritive enema (b) External—local application for absorption of venom (c) External—in nasal medication (d) Internal—in diet (e) Internal—the meat-juice in mixture | (a) Debility, rheumatism of the lower body (b) Poisonous bites (c) Heart disease, facial paralysis; ear, nose and throat diseases (d) Emaciation, seminal weakness, consumption, etc. (e) Oedema, diarrhoea, cardiac troubles, retarded development of the foetus |
| 102. MAYŪRA-BARHA Cī. 23, 98 | Peacock's feathers | Burnt for fumigation | As vermicide, insecticide, and general disinfectant |
| 103. MAYŪRA-PĀDANĀLA Cī. 17, 117 | Talons of the peacock | Internal—the burnt ashes as ingredient of linctus | Hiccup, congestion of phlegm |
| 104. MEṢA-ŚAKṚT Cī. 17, 116 | Dung of the ram | Internal—in aqueous infusion with honey | Hiccup, congestion of phlegm |
| 105. MRGA-RASA Cī. 19, 73; Kā. 12, 8; Śr. 12, 18/10 | Meat-juice of herbivorous forest animals | (a) Ingredient of nutritive enema (b) Internal—ingredient of soup | (a) Rheumatism of the lower limbs and organs (b) Enlarged spleen, dysentery |
| 106. MUKTĀ Cī. 17, 125 | Pearl | Internal—powdered and made into linctus | Hiccup, cough |
| 107. NAKULA-MĀMSA Cī. 8, 152; Śr. 12, 18/5 | Flesh of the mongoose | (a) Ingredient of nutritive enema (b) Internal—in diet | (a) Sexual debility (b) Consumption |
| 108. NAKULA-PURĪṢA Cī. 10, 51 | Dung of the mongoose | Inhalation of the fumes when burnt | Epilepsy, insanity |
| 109. NAKRA-ANḌA Cī. 2/2, 28 | Crocodile egg | Internal—as ingredient of sweetened pancakes | Seminal weakness, sexual debility |

TABLE 2: MEDICINAL SUBSTANCES OF ANIMAL ORIGIN

| | | | |
|---|--|---|--|
| 110. NAKRA-RETAS Ci. 2/1, 48 | The sperm of the crocodile | Internal—in diet, cooked with fowl's flesh | As a powerful aphrodisiac |
| 111. NAKRA-VASĀ Ci. 28, 128 | Crocodile fat | External—in nasal medication | Rheumatism of the joints |
| 112. NĀRI-KṢĪRA Śā. 27, 224; Ci. 15, 230; 17, 131; 22, 23 | Human milk | (a) External—as ingredient of nasal medication (b) External—in eye-ointment (c) Internal—in diet | (a) Haemothermia, hiccup, excessive thirst (b) Ophthalmia (c) Excessive hunger, emaciation, debility |
| 113. PĀNDAVIKA-NĀMSA Śā. 17, 56 | Flesh of the wood-pigeon | Internal—in diet | Debility, emaciation |
| 114. PĀRĀVATA-RASA Ci. 4, 41; 19, 72; 22, 29 | Meat-juice of the dove | Internal—in diet | Haemothermia, excessive thirst, dysentery |
| 115. PĀRĀVATA-ŚAKṚT Ci. 14, 55 | Droppings of the dove | External—in ointment | Piles |
| 116. PĪPLĪKĀ Ci. 13, 187 | Ants of the big black species | Surgical use (vide text, p. 24) | Intestinal perforation |
| 117. PLAVA-ASTHI Ci. 26, 246 | Bones of the pelican | External—the ashes as ingredient of eye-ointment | Eye diseases |
| 118. PRASAHA-KṢĪRA Ci. 29, 137 | Milk of the tearer group of animals (vide Table 1) | External—as ingredient of poultice | Stiffness, cramps, pricking pain, swelling |
| 119. PRASAHA-NĀMSA Ci. 8, 160; 15, 210; 18, 156; 24, 124 | Flesh of the tearer group of animals | (a) External—as poultice (b) Internal—in diet (c) Internal—the meat-juice as diet | (a) Stiffness, cramps, pricking pain, swelling (b) Indigestion, loss of appetite, consumption (c) Painful oedema of the groin and buttocks |
| 120. PRATUDA-NĀMSA Ci. 6, 16; 8, 161, 185; 29, 50 | Flesh of the pecker group of birds (Table 1) | (a) Internal—in diet (b) Internal—the meat-juice as diet | (a) Consumption (b) Urinary disorders, rheumatism, etc. |
| 121. PRATUDA-VASĀ Ci. 29, 74 | Fat of the pecker group of birds | External—as ingredient of medicated ghee | Rheumatism |
| 122. PRAVĀLA (VIDRUMA) Ci. 1/1, 58; 1/4, 22; 17, 125; 26, 56, 246 | Coral | (a) External—powdered and used in medicated ghee (b) External—powdered and used in eye-ointment (c) Internal—as infusion of the powder in rice-water (d) Internal—the powder made into linctus | (a) Acute spreading inflammation (b) Eye-diseases (c) Dysuria (d) Hiccup, cough |
| 123. PRṢAD-RASA Ci. 3, 191 | Meat-juice of the spotted deer | (a) Ingredient of nutritive enema (b) Internal—in diet | (a) As in Jivajva-anda (56) (b) Fever, toxicosis |

TABLE 2
Medicinal Substances of Animal Origin and their Uses—(Contd.)

| Name and synonyms in Caraka, with references | English equivalent | Mode of use or application | Medicinal uses in |
|--|---|--|--|
| 124. RĀJAHAMSA-RASA Śi. 12, 18/1 | Meat-juice of the swan | Ingredient of nutritive enema | Weakness, oligospermia, sexual debility |
| 125. R̥KṢA-MĀMSA Ci. 8, 153 | Bear's flesh | Internal—in diet | Consumption |
| 126. R̥KṢA-VASĀ Ci. 26, 47; 30, 112 | Bear's fat | (a) External—local application (b) Internal—used in decoction | (a) Prolapsed uterus (b) Dysuria |
| 127. ROHITA-ĀMIṢA Ci. 2/4, 18; Śi. 12, 18/4 | Flesh of the red carp fish | Internal—in diet | Indigestion, weakness, sexual debility |
| 128. ROHITA-PITTA Ci. 23, 183 | Bile of the red carp fish | External—as ingredient of eye-ointment | Poisonous bites in the region of the eyes |
| 129. ŚALLAKA-CARMAN, LOMAN, MŪTRA, NAKHA, PITTA, ŚAKRT Ci. 9, 75 | The hide, fur, urine, nails, bile, and droppings of the porcupine | (a) Inhalation of the fumes when burnt (b) External—the ashes as ingredient of ointment | (a) Insanity (b) Epilepsy |
| 130. ŚALLAKA-ASTHI, Ci. 17, 117 | Bones and quills of the porcupine | Internal—the ashes as ingredient of linctus | Severe hiccup |
| 131. ŚALLAKA-MĀMSA Śi. 27, 71; Ci. 17, 112 | Flesh of the porcupine | (a) The meat-juice as ingredient of nutritive enema (b) Internal—in diet (c) Internal—the meat-juice in liquid mixture | (a) Severe injuries, fracture, uracmia, constipation (b) Loss of appetite, congestion of phlegm, etc. (c) Flatulence, rheumatism |
| 132. SAMBHARA-MĀMSA Śi. 27, 46; Śi. 8, 24 | Flesh of the sambhara deer | Internal—in diet | Tendency to abortion in pregnancy |
| 133. ŚANKHA-CŪRṆA Śi. 27, 40; Ci. 3, 262; 4, 79, etc. | Conch-shell powder | (a) External in ointment (b) External—in poultice (c) Internal—in linctus | (a) Persistent skin diseases (b) Eye-diseases (c) Cough, hiccup |
| 134. ŚAPHARI Ci. 2/4, 17 | A kind of small fish | Internal—in diet | Sexual debility |
| 135. SĀRASA-ANḌA Śi. 12, 17, 19/2 | Crane's egg | Ingredient of nutritive enema | Seminal weakness, debility |
| 136. SĀRASA-ASTHI Ci. 26, 55 | Bones of the crane | Internal—powdered and used as ingredient of medicine | Dysuria |
| 137. SARPA-NIRMOKA Ci. 14, 49 | Cast-off slough of the snake | Inhalation of the fumes when burnt | Piles |

TABLE 2: MEDICINAL SUBSTANCES OF ANIMAL ORIGIN

| | | | |
|--|------------------------------------|---|--|
| 138. ŚAŚA-MĀMSA Śā. 15, 7; 27, 45, 76; Śā. 8, 24; Cī. 3, 191; 4, 41; 26, 175, etc. | Flesh of the rabbit or hare | (a) Internal—in diet (b) Internal—the meat-juice used in medicated ghee | (a) Fever, mild rheumatism, alcoholism, haemothermia (b) Diseases of the head |
| 139. ŚIKHI-ANḌA Śā. 12, 17, 19/1, 24 Syn.: BARHI-ANḌA Cī. 2/1, 49 | Egg of the pea-hen | (a) Ingredient of nutritive enema (b) Internal—in diet | (a) As in Jivajīva-anḍa (56) (b) Seminal weakness |
| 140. ŚIKHI-PADA Cī. 18, 170 | Peacock's claws | Internal—the ashes as ingredient of medicated ghee | Hiccup, cough |
| 141. ŚIKHI-PUTTA Cī. 7, 170; 23, 51, 217 | Peacock's bile | (a) External—in ointment (b) Internal—in pills (c) Internal—in medicated ghee | (a) Leucoderma (b) Poisoning (c) Poisonous bites |
| 142. SIMHA-MĀMSA Cī. 8, 153 | Flesh of the lion | Internal—as diet | Consumption |
| 143. SIMHA-MÜTRA Cī. 10, 41 | Urine of the lion | External—as nasal medication | Epilepsy |
| 144. SIMHA-VASĀ Cī. 3, 306 | Lion's fat | Internal—in medicated ghee | Recurrent fever |
| 145. ŚRGĀLA-MÜTRA Cī. 10, 41 | Jackal's urine | External—in nasal medication | Epilepsy |
| 146. ŚRGĀLA-PUTTA Cī. 9, 67 | Bile of the jackal | External—ingredient of eye-ointment | Eye diseases |
| 147. ŚÜKARA-MĀMSA Cī. 17, 74 | Pork | Internal—in diet as soup | Hiccup |
| 148. ŚVA-MÜTRA Cī. 10, 41 | Dog's urine | External—as nasal medication | Epilepsy |
| 149. ŚVA-PUTTA Cī. 10, 50 | Dog's bile | Inhalation of the fumes when burnt | Epilepsy |
| 150. ŚVĀVIT-MĀMSA Cī. 14, 126; 17, 112 | Flesh of the pangolin | Internal—in diet | Hiccup, rheumatism |
| 151. ŚYENA-RASA Śā. 27, 36 | Meat-juice of the hawk | Internal—in diet | For proper growth of the foetus |
| 152. TĀMRACÜDA-RASA Śā. 2, 32; Śā. 8, 28 | Meat-juice of the red-crested cock | Internal—in diet | Diseases of the uterine passage, abnormal growth of the foetus |
| 153. TARAKṢU-MĀMSA Cī. 8, 153; Śā. 12, 19/1 | Flesh of the hyena | (a) Ingredient of nutritive enema (b) Internal—in diet | (a) As in Jivajīva-anḍa (56) (b) Consumption |
| 154. TITIRI-MĀMSA Śā. 8, 28; Cī. 2/1, 41; 11, 70, etc. | Flesh of the grey partridge | (a) Internal—as ingredient of sweetened jelly (b) Internal—in diet | (a) Rheumatism, emaciation, menstrual disorders, sterility in women (b) Constipation, piles, jaundice, etc. |

TABLE 2
Medicinal Substances of Animal Origin and their Uses—(Contd.)

| Name and synonyms in Caraka, with references | English equivalent | Mode of use or application | Medicinal uses in |
|--|---|--|--|
| 155. ULŪKA-CARMAN, MŪTRA, NAKHA, PURIṢA, PITTA Cī. 9, 75 | Skin, urine, nails, dung and bile of the owl | (a) Inhalation of the fumes when burnt (b) External—prepared for local application | (a) & (b) Insanity |
| 156. ULŪKA-MĀMSA Cī. 8, 150 | Flesh of the owl | Internal—in diet | Consumption |
| 157. UṢṬRA-KARIṢA Sū. 14, 26; Cī. 17, 116 | Camel-dung | Burnt for fumigation | As a diaphoretic |
| 158. UṢṬRA-MĀMSA Cī. 8, 158; 14, 126 | Flesh of the camel | Internal—in diet | Emaciation, flatulence |
| 159. UṢṬRA-MŪTRA Sū. 1, 103 | Camel's urine | Internal—as drink | Hiccup, cough, piles |
| 160. UṢṬRA-VASĀ Cī. 14, 48 | Camel's fat | (a) Inhalation of the fumes when burnt (b) External—for local application | (a) & (b) Piles |
| 161. UṢṬRI-PAYAS Cī. 13, 107, 183; 22, 23 | Camel's milk | (a) Internal—to be used as exclusive diet for one month (b) Internal—in diet | (a) Oedema (b) Constipation, colic pain, debility, etc. |
| 162. VASTĀ-CARMAN, MŪTRA, NAKHA, PURIṢA, PITTA Cī. 9, 75 | Hide, urine, nails, dung and bile of the she-goat | (a) Inhalation of the fumes when burnt (b) External—prepared for local application | (a) & (b) Insanity |
| 163. VASTA-MŪTRA Cī. 9, 71; 10, 26, etc. | Urine of the he-goat | (a) External—in ointment (b) External—in nasal medication (c) External—in eye-ointment (d) Internal—in medicated ghee | (a) Epilepsy, toxicosis, piles, vaginitis, cervicitis (b) Insanity (c) Dimness of vision, infection and discharge of pus (d) Cardiac seizures |
| 164. VARĀHA-MĀMSA Sū. 27, 78; Cī. 2/4, 11; 18, 80 | Hog's flesh | Internal—in diet | Emaciation, loss of appetite, neuralgia, sexual debility |
| 165. VARĀHA-PITTA Cī. 5, 175 | Hog's bile | External—for local application | Tumour inside the vaginal passage |
| 166. VARĀHA-ŚOṆITA Cī. 7, 122; 30, 110 | Hog's blood | (a) External—as skin lotion (b) Internal—as ingredient of acidulated drink | (a) Cutaneous eruptions (b) Amenorrhoea |

TABLE 2: MEDICINAL SUBSTANCES OF ANIMAL ORIGIN

| | | | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|---|---|--|
| 167. VARĀHA-ŚAKṚT | Ci. 14, 51; 17, 116 | Hog's dung | (a) Inhalation of the fumes when burnt (b) Internal—the aqueous extract in linctus | (a) Piles (b) Hiccup, deep-seated phlegm |
| 168. VARĀHA-VṚṢAṆA | Śi. 12, 18/8 | Hog's testes | Ingredient of nutritive enema | Sexual debility |
| 169. VARTAKA-MĀMSA | Sā. 27, 48; Ci. 4, 41, 250; 5, 110, etc. | Flesh of the button-quail | Internal—in diet | Flatulence, enlarged spleen, haemothermia |
| 170. VIṢKIRA-MĀMSA | Sā. 27, 48; Ci. 6, 19; 8, 161, etc. | Flesh of the gallinaceous birds (Table I) | (a) Ingredient of nutritive enema (b) Internal—in diet | (a) Sexual debility, dysuria (b) Rheumatic conditions, excessive bile secretion, etc. |
| 171. VRKA-CARMAN, MŪTRA, PĪTTA, ŚAKṚT | NAKHA, Ci. 9, 75 | Hide, urine, nails, dung and bile of the wolf | (a) Inhalation of the fumes when burnt (b) External—prepared for local application | (a) & (b) Insanity |
| 172. VIṢADAMŚA-VASĀ | Ci. 14, 48 | Fat of the animals of the feline species | (a) Inhalation of the fumes when burnt (b) External—as local application of the fumes when burnt | (a) & (b) Piles |
| 173. VIṢADAMŚA-CARMAN | Ci. 14, 49 | Hides of animals of the feline species | External—for local application of the fumes when burnt | Piles |
| 174. VṚṢA-RASA | Śi. 12, 18/6 | Meat-juice of the bull | Ingredient of nutritive enema | Sexual debility |
| 175. VṚṢA-VṚṢAṆA | Śi. 12, 18/2 | Testes of the bull | Ingredient of nutritive enema | Sexual debility |
| 176. VYĀGHRA-MĀMSA | Ci. 8, 153 | Flesh of the tiger | Internal—in diet | Consumption |
| 177. VYĀGHRA-VASĀ | Ci. 3, 305 | Tiger's fat | External—as nasal medication | Recurrent fevers |

TABLE 3
Medicinal Plants and Plant Products and their Uses

| Name in Caraka; reference, and synonyms if any | Modern and botanical names | Mode of use | Medicinal uses in |
|---|--|--|---|
| 1. ĀDHAKĪ Sū. 21, 26 etc. | Pigeon pea <i>Cajanus indicus</i> Spreng. | The pods used alone (cooked) or in prescription (internal) | Obesity, abdominal diseases, poisoning, rheumatism, etc. |
| 2. ĀDITYAVALLĪ Cī. 26, 268 | Sun-flower <i>Helianthus annulus</i> Linn. | The roots used in prescriptions (external) | Affections of the head, grey hairs |
| 3. AGNIMANTHA Sū. 2, 11, etc. Syn.: Anantā, Śrīparṇī, Jayā, Vijayā | <i>Premna integrifolia</i> Linn. | The entire plant used in prescriptions (internal) | Constipation, piles, misperistalsis, urinary complaints, etc. |
| 4. AGURU Sū. 3, 28, etc. Syn.: Alaktaka, Jōṅṅaka, Kālāguru, Vāsuka | Aloe-wood tree <i>Aquilaria agallocha</i> Roxb. | The powdered wood used alone or in prescriptions (external and internal) | Fever, toxicosis, dermatosis, leucoderma, rheumatism, hiccup, etc. |
| 5. AJAGANDHĀ Sū. 2, 4, etc. Syn.: Ugragandhā | <i>Peucedanum grande</i> Bc. | The seeds used in prescriptions (internal) | Headache, rhinitis, paraplegia, etc.; also as purgative and analgesic |
| 6. AJAKARNA Sū. 3, 5 etc. Syn.: Kālakūṭa, Cīrapatraka | White dammer <i>Vateria indica</i> Linn. | The dried and pulverized plant used in prescriptions (external and internal) | Obstinate skin diseases, fistula, piles, etc.; as a sedative |
| 7. AJAMODĀ Sū. 23, 20, etc. Syn.: Dīpyaka, Markaṭi, Viśala, Yavānikā, Ajamodaka | Indian celery <i>Cerium roxburghianum</i> Benth. | The powdered seeds used in prescriptions (internal) | Urinary disorders, indigestion, jaundice, tumours, severe oedema, dysentery, etc. |
| 8. ĀKHUPARNĪ Sū. 3, 8, etc. Syn.: Candā, Citrā, Mūṣikaparṇī, Dravanti, Mūṣikavāya, Nvāgrodhī, Pratyakīrenī, Rapḍā, Sambarī, Upacitrā | <i>Ipomoea reniformis</i> Clois. | The powdered and sun-dried roots used in prescriptions (external) | Fistula, piles, ringworms urinary diseases, vaginitis |
| 9. AKṢOṬA Cī. 11, 37, etc. | Walnut tree <i>Alcautes moluccana</i> Willd. | The edible nut used in prescriptions (internal) | Anaemia, debility, consumption, senility, etc.; as a vitalizer |
| 10. ĀMALAKĪ Sū. 4, 11, etc. Syn.: Dhāturi, Kāyasthā, Amoghā, Āmalaka | Emblie myrobolan <i>Phyllanthus emblica</i> Linn. | The dried fruit or the fresh juice used in prescriptions (internal) | As tonic in a very large number of diseases |
| 11. AMBAṢṬAKĪ Sū. 4, 9/5, etc. Syn.: Ambaṣṭā, Ambausthā, Pālā, Śreyasī, Veerā, Pāṭhī | Velvet-leaf tree <i>Cissampelos pareira</i> Linn. | The root, bark and leaves used in prescriptions (internal) | Assimilation disorders, jaundice, colic pain, etc. |
| 12. ĀMLIKĀ Sū. 27, 152, etc. Syn.: Suktā | Tamarind tree <i>Tamarindus indicus</i> Linn. | The ripe fruit used in prescriptions (internal) | Diarrhoea, dysentery, oedema, etc.; as appetizer and digestive stimulant |

| | | | |
|--|---|--|--|
| 13. ĀMRA Sū. 2, 28, etc. Syn.: Sahakāra | Mango tree <i>Mangifera indica</i> Linn. | The fresh fruit used alone with other substances (internal); the powdered stone (external) | Assimilation disorders, etc.; the stone used for restoring normal colour of skin |
| 14. ĀMRATAKA Cī. 22, 35, etc. Syn.: Śrngī | Hog-plum tree <i>Spondias mangifera</i> Willd. | The fruits as ingredient of sweet jelly | Fainting, neuralgia, painful piles, cardiac disorders, etc. |
| 15. ANKOTA Sū. 27, 159, etc. Syn.: Ānkola, Nikocaka | Alangy <i>Alangium lamarkii</i> Thw. | The fruit as ingredient of medicated ghee | Chronic poisoning, epilepsy, etc. |
| 16. APĀMĀRGA Sū. 2, 3, etc. | Rough chaff tree <i>Achyranthes aspera</i> Linn. | The dried fruits alone or in prescriptions (internal) | Parasitic infection of the head, hemiplegia; as emetic |
| 17. ĀRAGVADHĀ Sū. 1, 83, etc. Syn.: Pratyakpūṣpī, Śaikhārika, Mayūraka | Indian labarbum. <i>Cassia fistula</i> Linn. | The sap, root, bark and leaves used in prescriptions (internal) | Mispristalsis in infants and in chronic skin affections; as diuretic and purgative |
| 18. ĀRDRĀKA Vi. 8, 142, etc. Syn.: Śrngavera, Viśvabhṣaja, Nāgara | Ginger tree <i>Zingiber officinale</i> Rosc. | The dried tubers used as spice or in prescriptions (internal) | Abdominal diseases, indigestion, consumption, etc. |
| 19. ARIMEDA Vi. 8, 144, etc. | White babool tree <i>Acacia leucophloea</i> Willd. | The bark or pith used in decoctions (external) | Dental and oral diseases |
| 20. ARJAKA Sū. 14, 32, etc. Syn.: Kālamalaka, Kutarekta, Sumukhā, Phañjijaka | Shrubby basil <i>Ocimum gratissimum</i> Linn. | The pulp or juice of the leaves used in prescriptions (external) | Skin infections, oedema, etc. |
| 21. ARJUNA Cī. 8, 129, etc. Syn.: Dhananjaya, Kakubha | Arjun tree <i>Terminalia arjuna</i> Bedd. | The bark and leaves used in prescriptions (internal) | Diarrhoea, ulcers, cardiac disorders, etc. |
| 22. ARKA Cī. 23, 56 | Madar tree <i>Calotropis gigantea</i> R. Br. | Milky exudations from the bark used in prescriptions (external) | Poisoning, bites, wounds, etc.; as laxative |
| 23. ARUKA Sū. 25, 39, etc. Syn.: Ābuka | Peach tree <i>Prunus persica</i> Linn. | The fruits taken alone | Tonic food |
| 24. ASANA Sū. 25, 49, etc. Syn.: Bijaka, Priyaka | <i>Terminalia tomentosa</i> Bed. | A decoction of the bark used in prescriptions (internal) | Rheumatism, fever, urinary diseases, etc. |
| 25. ĀŚMĀNTAKA Sū. 1, 114, etc. Syn.: Ambudā, Kovidāra | Ebony tree <i>Diospyros montana</i> | A decoction of the leaves (internal) | Piles, diseases of the head; as emetic, purgative, etc. |
| 26. AŚOKA Sū. 4, 18/2 | Asoka tree <i>Saraca indica</i> Linn. | A decoction of the flowering buds and seeds in prescriptions (internal) | Haemorrhemia, haemorrhage; as sedative, purgative, etc. |
| 27. AŚVAGANDHĀ Sū. 3, 8, etc. Syn.: Aśvāvarohikā, Kaṣṭhaka, Kākoli | Winter cherry <i>Withania somnifera</i> Dunal | The leaves and roots used as ingredients of medicinal oil or ghee | Skin diseases, hiccup, consumption, etc. |
| 28. AŚVĀTTHA Sū. 25, 49, etc. Syn.: Bodhivṛkṣa, Sebya, Gajabhakṣa, Kṣīradruma | Sacred fig. <i>Ficus religiosa</i> Linn. | The tender roots or the bark, in paste form (internal and external) | Skin infections, wounds etc.; as roborant and purgative |

TABLE 3
Medicinal Plants and Plant Products and their Uses—(Contd.)

| Name in Caraka; reference, and synonyms if any | Modern and botanical names | Mode of use | Medicinal uses in |
|--|--|--|---|
| 29. ATASI Ci. 8, 176, etc. Syn.: Haimavati, Umā, Maṣṣṛā | Linseed tree; flax <i>Linum usitatissimum</i> Linn. | The decoction of the seeds and leaves used in prescriptions (internal) | Urinary diseases, anaemia, consumption, etc. |
| 30. ATIBALĀ Ci. 3, 267, etc. Syn.: Vātyāvanī, Vātyapuspī | Indian sida <i>Sida rhombifolia</i> Linn. | Extract of entire plant used in prescriptions (internal) | Fevers, loss of vitality, rheumatic conditions, etc. |
| 31. ATIVIṢĀ Ci. 3, 204, etc. Syn.: Mahausadhā, Prativīṣa, Śuklakāṇḍa, Śvetā | Indian aconite <i>Aconitum heterophyllum</i> Wall. | The root and tuber used in prescriptions (internal) | Dysuria, fever, leucoderma, obesity, diarrhoea, etc. |
| 32. ĀTMAGUPTĀ Ci. 18, 76, etc. Syn.: Adhigandhā, Ajadā, Kapitacchu, Lāngulī, Ṛṣabhi, Ṛṣyaprokṭā, Svaguptā, Syāmaguptā | Cowage plant <i>Mucuna pruriens</i> De. | The decoction of the root and seeds as ingredients of medicated ghee, etc. | Cough, muscular stiffness, facial paralysis, general weakness, etc. |
| 33. AVAKAPUṢPĪ Ci. 7, 114, etc. Syn.: Aticchatrā, Chatrā, Karavī, Śatapuspā | Indian borage <i>Trichodema indicum</i> R. Br. | Extract of the leaves in oil as ingredient of medicated ghee | Leprosy, dermatosis, piles, etc. |
| 34. BADARĪ Ci. 14, 214, etc. Syn.: Badara, Kuvala, Sauvira, Phenila | Jujubā fruit tree <i>Zizyphus jujuba</i> Linn. | A sweetened decoction of the leaves used in prescriptions (internal) | Piles, loss of voice, griddiness, etc. |
| 35. BAKULĀ Vi. 7, 21, etc. Syn.: Késara, Śimhakeśara, Sthirā, Kusu-mā, Vīśārada, Dhanvi, Madhupuspā | Bakula tree <i>Mimusops elengi</i> Linn. | Extract of the bark and root with honey, or in medicated ghee | Helminthiasis, fever |
| 36. BALĀ Śi. 2, 13, etc. Syn.: Sumagnā, Kharayaṣṭhikā, Jayantī, Bhadrabalā, Bhadraudanī | Heart-leaf sida <i>Sida cordifolia</i> Linn. | Decoction of the leaves used in prescriptions (internal) | Constipation, splenic disorders; for rejuvenation and for inducing conception |
| 37. BHADRAMUṢṬĀ Ci. 24, 145, etc. Syn.: Kuruviṭva | Nut-grass <i>Cyperus tuberosus</i> Roth. | Decoction of the roots used in prescriptions (internal) | Cough, spitting of blood, etc. |
| 38. BHALLĀTAKA Śi. 3, 5, etc. Syn.: Bhallāta, Bhallātaki, Śallabija, Aruṣkāra | Marking-nut tree <i>Semecarpus anacardium</i> Linn. | Decoction of the nuts used in prescriptions (internal and external) | Obstinate skin diseases, poisoning; as vitalizer and for rejuvenation |
| 39. BHĀRADVĀJĪ Śi. 4, 8/2, etc. Syn.: Vyāghraja | Devil's cotton tree <i>Abramo augusta</i> Linn. | Infusion of the leaves and roots used in prescriptions (internal and external) | Debility, female diseases, amenorrhoea, etc. |

TABLE 3: MEDICINAL PLANTS & PLANT PRODUCTS

55

| | | | |
|--|---|---|---|
| 40. BHĀRGĪ Cī. 3, 211, etc. Syn.: Aṅgāravallī, Phañjī, Brahmayasṭhī, Bharaṅgī | <i>Clerodendron serratum</i> | The roots used alone, or as ingredient of medicinal oil | Cough, fevers, hard cutaneous eruptions, etc. |
| 41. BHĀVYA Cī. 24, 136, etc. Syn.: Bhava | Indian dillenia <i>Dillenia indica</i> Linn. | Extract of fruit as ingredient of medicinal ghee | Urinary calculus, retention of urine, paralysis, etc. |
| 42. BHRŪGARĀJA Cī. 18, 117, etc. Syn.: Bhrūga, Bhrūgaraka, Bhrūgāra | Trailing eclipta <i>Wedelia calendulacea</i> Less. | The plant-juice taken with honey | Cough, grey hairs and senility |
| 43. BHŪRJA Śr. 3, 4, etc. Syn.: Bhūrijaṭra, Citratvak, Bhuja, Carmī | Bhojapatra tree <i>Betula bhojapatra</i> Wall. | The nodes and bark compounded into ointment | Ringworm, acute spreading suppurations, ulcers |
| *44. VIRHĪTAKA Śr. 4, 13, etc. Syn.: Aksa, Vibhītākī, Tusā, Vibhīta, Kāmagna | Beleric myrobolan <i>Terminalia belerica</i> Retz. | The dried fruits used alone or in prescriptions (internal) | Cough, heart-disease, etc.; as purgative and blood-cleanser |
| 45. BĪJAPŪRAKA Cī. 5, 166, etc. Syn.: Bījapūra, Mātulaṅga, Kēsārāmla | Adam's apple tree <i>Citrus medica</i> Linn. | The fruit taken alone or in prescriptions (internal) | Colic pain, alcoholism; as appetizer |
| 46. BILVA Śr. 2, 19, etc. Syn.: Śrīphala, Śailapatra, Tripatra, Mahāphala Mahākapittha | Bengal quince, <i>Aegle marmelos</i> Corr. | The fruit used alone or in prescriptions (internal) | Diarrhoea, constipation; in rejuvenation |
| 47. BIMBĪ Śr. 1, 78, etc. Syn.: Tuṇḍī, Piluparṇī, Oṣṭhī, Bimbā, Bimbaka, Raktaphala, Tikṭatuṇḍī | Kunch tree <i>Cephalandra indica</i> Naud. | The dried root or juice used in prescriptions (internal and external) | Hard tumours, piles; as purgative and emetic |
| 48. BRĀHMĪ Śr. 8, 58, etc. Syn.: Vayasthā, Surasā, Somavallārī, Subarcalā | Indian pennywort <i>Herpestis monnina</i> H. B. & K. | The dried and powdered plant used in prescriptions (internal) | Senile decay, loss of memory; as preventive of abortion |
| 49. BRHĀTĪ Cī. 19, 26, etc. Syn.: Mahatī, Hīṅgulī Prasaha, Bhratikā, Vārakī, Kāntā. | Indian nightshade <i>Solanum indicum</i> Linn. | The leaves and roots used in prescriptions (internal and external) | Diarrhoea, toxicosis, pain and oedema of the vagina |
| 50. CANDANA Cī. 1/1, 148, etc. Syn.: Malayaja, Gandhasāra, Śītahima | Sandal wood tree <i>Santalum album</i> Linn. | The powdered wood or paste in prescriptions (internal and external) | Diarrhoea, vomiting, chronic skin diseases, etc. |
| 51. CARATĪ Cī. 9, 45, etc. | <i>Ionidium suffruticosum</i> De. | The plant used as ingredient of medicinal ghee | Insanity, epilepsy; for proper growth in childhood |
| 52. CAVIKĀ Cī. 18, 158, etc. Syn.: Cavyā, Cavi, Nākulī, Cavyaka | <i>Piper chaba</i> Hunter | Decoction of the roots and dried fruits used for medicinal ghee | Consumptive cough, indigestion, change of voice, emaciation, etc. |
| 53. CILLI Śr. 27, 98 | Wild spinach <i>Chenopodium album</i> Linn. | Cooked as a pot-herb | As aid to elimination |
| 54. CIRABILVA Cī. 3, 267, etc. Syn.: Naktamāla, Putiparṇa | Indian beech. <i>Pongamia glabra</i> Vent. | Decoction of the sprouts used in prescriptions (internal) | Fever, disorders of the spleen |

TABLE 3
Medicinal Plants and Plant Products and their Uses—(Contd.)

| Name in Caraka; reference, and synonyms if any | Modern and botanical names | Mode of use | Medicinal uses in |
|---|--|---|--|
| 55. CIRMATA <i>Ci.</i> 19, 32, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Kṣetracirmita, Pāṇḍuphala, Pāṭhyā | <i>Cucumis melo</i> Linn. | The seeds used in decoction. The fruit taken alone or as ingredient of sweet drink | Dysentery; as laxative |
| 56. CITRAKA <i>Sā.</i> 2, 28, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Pāṭhi, Dārūpa, Raktacitraka, Uṣaṇa | White lead wort <i>Plumbago zeylonica</i> Linn. | Decoction of the roots and leaves used in prescriptions for internal use | Urinary diseases, anaemica, etc.; as laxative and digestive |
| 57. COORAKA <i>Sā.</i> 3, 24, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Pāṇpacoraka, Phalacoraka, Kṣemaka | Indian angelica tree <i>Angelica glauca</i> Edgew. | The roots and stalks used in internal and external prescriptions | Headache, epilepsy, hiccup, etc. |
| 58. CUKRĀ <i>Ci.</i> 8, 131 | Wood sorrel tree <i>Rumex vesicarius</i> Linn. | The extracted juice as ingredient of vegetable soup | Anorexia |
| 59. CUṆCŪPARṆIKĀ <i>Sā.</i> 27, 100 | Coxcomb plant. <i>Coccoris oltorius</i> Linn. | Cooked as a pot-herb | As aid in elimination |
| 60. DĀDIMA <i>Sā.</i> 2, 20, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Dāḍimba, Raktapūṣpa, Karaka | Pomegranate tree <i>Punica granatum</i> Linn. | The fruit-juice taken alone or in prescriptions | Diarrhoea, cough, oedema, etc.; as digestive and anti-emetic |
| 61. DANTAŚATHA <i>Ci.</i> 3, 267, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Rocanaka, Jambhaka | Lemon tree <i>Citrus medica</i> Linn. (Variety: <i>C. limonum</i> or <i>acida</i>) | The fruit-juice taken alone or with drinks | Fever; as digestive |
| 62. DANTIN <i>Sā.</i> 2, 9, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Uḍumbaraparṇi, Makulaka, Citrā | Wild croton <i>Balaigeran montanum</i> Muell & Arg. | The sun-dried roots used in prescriptions for internal use | Oedema, jaundice, stomach complaints |
| 63. DĀRBHA <i>Sā.</i> 4, 12, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Kuśa, Kṣurapatra, Yagnika | Large variety of sacrificial grass <i>Eragrostis cynosuroides</i> Beauv. | The extract of the grass used in prescriptions for internal use | Senility, wasting diseases, etc.; for increasing lactation |
| 64. DĀRUHARIDRĀ <i>Sā.</i> 4, 11, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Pīṭḍru, Pīṭḍāru, Hemakānta | Indian barberry <i>Berberis asiatica</i> Roxb. | The extract of the plant used in prescriptions for internal use | Haemorrhage, piles, pruritus, alopecia, etc. |
| 65. DEVADĀRU <i>Ci.</i> 16, 48, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : Śatapatraka, Suradruma, Devadruma | Deodar tree <i>Cedrus lodd.</i> (Varieties: <i>C. libani</i> Barl & <i>C. deodara</i>) H.K. & F. | The dried leaves and the extract of the wood and roots used in prescriptions for internal use | Headache, intestinal worms, urinary diseases, menorrhagia, fistula, etc. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|--|
| 66. DHĀMĀRGAVA Kā. 4, 1, etc. Syn.: Kartolaki, Kothaphala, Mahājālīni, Rajakotālati | Sponge-gourd <i>Luffa aegyptia</i> Mill. | The fruits, flowers and tender leaves used in decoctions for internal use | Cough, toxicosis, phlegm; as purgative and emetic |
| 67. DHANVAN Ci. 3, 258, etc. Syn.: Dhanurvrikṣa | Indian linden tree <i>Greuter tiliifolia</i> Vahl. | The powdered bark used internally in decoctions and externally in ointments | Fever, urinary diseases |
| 68. DHĀNYAKA Ci. 3, 182, etc. Syn.: Tumburuka, Dhanyā, Dhāni, Dhanika, Bijadhānya, Kustumbura | Coriander plant <i>Coriandrum sativum</i> Linn. | The entire plant used in prescrip- tions for internal use | As digestive, diaphoretic and an aid to virility |
| 69. DHĀYAKI Śā. 4, 15, etc. Syn.: Bahupuspikā, Dhātrī, Kumuda, Kūñjara, Tāmrapuṣpī, Pārvatī | Fulsee flower tree <i>Woodfordia floribunda</i> Salisb. | The flowers as ingredient of sweetened decoctions for internal use | Fever, haemothermia; as intestinal astringent |
| 70. DHAVA Śā. 3, 3, etc. Syn.: Madhuravalka, Madhuratvak, Vakavrikṣa | Crane tree <i>Anogeissus latifolia</i> Wall. | The resin as ingredient of medicinal oil for external application | Chronic skin diseases, senility, dysuria, snake-bites, etc. |
| 71. DRĀKṢĀ Ci. 5, 123, etc. Syn.: Rasa, Rasā, Madhurasā, Kāśmirikā | Grape vine <i>Vitis vinifera</i> Linn. | The shoots used in prescriptions; the fruits used alone or in drinks | Haemothermia, cardiac disorders, cough, etc. |
| 72. DUGDHIKĀ Ci. 8, 131, etc. Syn.: Kṣīrīnī, Kṣīrī, Svādūparnī, Dugdhi | <i>Oxytelma esculentum</i> R. Br. | Ingredient of vegetable soup | Diarrhoea; painful bleeding piles, etc.; as roborant |
| 73. DUḤSPARŚĀ Ci. 24, 166 | Khorasan thorn <i>Alhagi maurorum</i> Desau. | Infusion in boiling water used in prescriptions (internal) | Acute alcoholism |
| 74. DŪRVĀ Ci. 3, 258, etc. Syn.: Bhārgavi, Śataparvā, Tiktaparvā, Śataviryā, Latā, Śitā | Couch grass <i>Cynodon dactylon</i> Pers. | The grass leaves as ingredient of medicinal oil | Fever, neuralgic pain, etc.; as haemostatic |
| 75. EĪA Śā. 2, 4, etc. Syn.: Bhṛṅgaparnikā, Tuttha, Kṣudrela, Sukṣmalla | Lesser cardamom plant <i>Elettaria cardamomum</i> | The spice used alone or in prescrip- tions (internal) | Rhinitis, hemicrania, pleural affections, etc. |
| 76. ELAPARṆĪ Ci. 8, 131 | Kulanjan plant <i>Alpinia galanga</i> Swartz | Ingredient of vegetable soup | Diarrhoea |
| 77. ELVALUKA Ci. 14, 159 | Cherry tree <i>Prunus cerasus</i> Linn. | The fruits and roots used in sweet- ened decoctions (internal) | Abdominal diseases, paralytic conditions, intestinal obstruction, etc. |
| 78. ERAKĀ Śā. 3, 24, etc. Syn.: Gundrā, Simbigundrā, Śṛṅgaverabha- mūlaka | Elephant grass <i>Typha elephantina</i> Roxb. | The decoction of the roots used in prescriptions (internal) | Headache, rheumatic conditions |
| 79. ERANDA Śā. 2, 12, etc. Syn.: Citrabija, Tripuṭi, Tribija, Caucū, Maṇḍa, Uruvaka | Castor oil plant <i>Ricinus communis</i> Linn. | The expressed oil used alone or in prescriptions (internal) | Misperistalsis; as purgative |

TABLE 3
Medicinal Plant's and Plant Products and their Uses—(Contd.)

| Name in Caraka; reference, and synonyms if any | Modern and botanical names | Mode of use | Medicinal uses in |
|--|---|--|--|
| 80. ERVĀKA Ci. 26, 52, etc. Syn.: Lomaśa, Toyaphala, Lomaśakāṇḍa, Vṛṭaphala | Melon cucumber plant <i>Cucumis utilisimus</i> Linn. | The seeds used in prescriptions (internal) | Urinary calculus, dysuria, diseases of the bladder |
| 81. GAJAPIPPALI Ci. 12, 41, etc. Syn.: Karippali, Kūñjarapippali, Kapi-valika, Haṣṭanti | Elephant pepper plant <i>Scindapsus officinalis</i> Schott | The powdered dried fruit used in prescriptions (internal) | Files, oedema, anaemia |
| 82. GAVEDHUKA Śū. 2, 25, etc. Syn.: Gāvedhu, Kṣudra | Job's tears <i>Cox lachryma</i> Jobi Linn. | The seeds used alone or in infusion; or cooked as cereal | Emaciation and debility |
| 83. HAMSAPĀDĪ Ci. 23, 220, etc. Syn.: Godhāpādikā, Hamsavati, Hamsapādika, Vikrāntā | Maidenhair <i>Adiantum capilluceneris</i> Linn. | The seeds used in prescriptions (external) | Suppurations due to poisonous bites; rheumatic conditions |
| 84. HAPUSA Śū. 23, 20, etc. Syn.: Habusa, Vipusa, Vigandhika | Juniper tree <i>Juniperus communis</i> Linn. | The seeds in decoction or as ingredient of medicinal ghee (internal) | Female diseases, dysuria, throat-spasms, etc. |
| 85. HARIDRĀ Śū. 4, 11, etc. Syn.: Priyaka, Haridruma | Turneric plant <i>Curcuma longa</i> Roxb. | The dried tubers used in prescriptions (external and internal) | Dermatosis, toxicosis, impaired vision, etc. |
| 86. HARTAKĪ Śū. 13, 92, etc. Syn.: Amṛta, Sīvā, Dibyā, Prānadā, Vanatikṭā, Cetaki, Jivanikā, Abhayā | Chebulic myrobolan <i>Terminalia chebula</i> Rtz. | The dried fruits and seeds taken alone or in prescriptions (internal) | Dermatosis, oedema, urinary diseases; as general tonic, blood purifier and purgative |
| 87. HINGU Śū. 2, 29, etc. Syn.: Hinguka | Asafoetida plant <i>Ferula tournax</i> Linn. (Varieties: <i>F. fetida</i> Regil, <i>F. narthex</i> Boiss) | The dried fruits as ingredient of gruel | Cough, dysuria, dermatosis, etc.; as laxative, digestive, and rejuvenant |
| 88. HINGUPARNĪ Ci. 9, 57, etc. | Emetic nut <i>Randia dumetorum</i> Lamk. | A decoction of the nuts used in prescriptions (external and internal) | Inguinal swellings, spleen diseases, helminthiasis, etc. |
| 89. IKṢU Śū. 4, 10, etc. | Sugarcane <i>Saccharum officinarum</i> Linn. | The juice used as drink or as ingredient of mixed drink; the roots used in prescriptions | Loss of voice, vomiting, morbid thirst; for longevity; as a roborant |
| 90. IKṢURAKA Ci. 4, 78, etc. Syn.: Kṣuraka, Trikṣura, Vajra, Kokilakṣa | Long-leaved barberia <i>Asteracantha longifolia</i> Nees | A decoction of the leaves and roots used alone or in prescriptions (internal) | Urinary calculus, haemothermia; as an aid to virility |

TABLE 3
Medicinal Plants and Plant Products and their Uses—(Contd.)

| Name in Caraka; reference, and synonyms if any | Modern and botanical names | Mode of use | Medical uses in |
|--|--|---|--|
| 106. KADARA Śr. 25, 49, etc. Syn.: Varvara | Gum arabic tree <i>Acacia arabica</i> Willd. | The gum or milky exudate or a decoction of the leaves used in prescriptions (internal) | Urticaria, fever, etc. |
| 107. KĀKADUMBARIKĀ Cī. 7, 170 | Redwood fig tree <i>Ficus hispida</i> Linn. | A paste of the fruits used in prescriptions (external) | Leucoderma |
| 108. KĀKAMĀCĪ Śr. 27, 89, etc. Syn.: Kākamācīkā, Kākāhyā, Kākamātā | Black nightshade <i>Solanum nigrum</i> Linn. | The entire plant cooked and used as vegetable | Skin lesions, oedema, etc.; as aphrodisiac |
| 109. KĀKANĀSA Cī. 18, 40, etc. Syn.: Kākatundaphala, Vāyasi | Indian perry <i>Hydrophilia angustifolia</i> R. Br. | A paste of the leaves used in ointments or in medicated ghee (internal) | Hard nodules on the skin, jaundice, cough, consumption, etc. |
| 110. KĀKĀNDOLĀ Śr. 27, 34 | Sword bean <i>Canavalia ensiformis</i> De. | The lentils used as food | As an aid to elimination, as an aphrodisiac and an aid to virility |
| 111. KAKKOLA Cī. 26, 210, etc. Syn.: Takkola, Śhulāmarica, Koraka, Kakkolaka | Cubeb plant <i>Piper cubeba</i> Linn. | A paste of the fruits as ingredient of medicinal oil or mouth wash | Oral and dental diseases, fevers, loss of voice, etc. |
| 112. KALAMBA Śr. 27, 100 | Wild pot-herb <i>Ipomoea reptans</i> Poir. | Cooked as a pot-herb | As a digestive, a cooling agent, and an aid to elimination |
| 113. KĀLĀNUSĀRIKĀ Cī. 26, 243 | <i>Ichnocarpus frutescens</i> R. Br. | An extract of the leaves as ointment (external) | All eye-diseases; as a promotor of eyesight |
| 114. KĀLĀŚAKA Śr. 27, 91, etc. Syn.: Kālaka | Jute plant <i>Cochorus capsularis</i> Linn. | The cooked leaves (internal) | Poisoning, oedema, intestinal stasis, etc. |
| 115. KALĀYA Cī. 20, 37, etc. | Chickling-vetch lentil <i>Lathyrus sativus</i> Linn. | A decoction of the leaves (internal); the paste of the lentil for local application | Vomiting, nausea, suppurated wounds |
| 116. KĀLEYAKA Śr. 3, 26 | Yellow sandal tree <i>Santalum flavum</i> Linn. | A paste of the finely divided wood as ointment (external) | As a cooling agent |
| 117. KAMALA Śr. 3, 24, etc. Syn.: Padma, Pankaja, Nalika, Ambuja, Kokanada, Puṇdarika | East Indian lotus plant <i>Nelumbium speciosum</i> Willd. | The paste of the petals as ingredient of an unguent; cold aqueous extract used as drink | Nasal haemorrhage, dysuria |

TABLE 3: MEDICINAL PLANTS & PLANT PRODUCTS

| | | | |
|---|---|--|---|
| 118. KAMPILLAKA Śā. 1, 83 | The "kamala" dye plant <i>Mallotus philippinensis</i> Muell. | Extract as ingredient of medicinal oil and in internal prescriptions | Chronic skin diseases, oedema; as purgative |
| 119. KANAKAPUṢPĪ Cī. 7, 167 | Golden thistle or yellow thistle <i>Euphorbia thomsoniana</i> Boiss. | The petals as ingredient of ointment | Leucoderma |
| 120. KANTAKĀRI Śā. 2, 22, etc. Syn.: Kaṇṭakārikā, Vyāghri | Wild egg-plant <i>Solanum anthocarpum</i> Schr. & Wendl. | Extract of the entire plant and fruits in prescriptions (internal) | Dysuria, misperistalsis, etc.; for rejuvenation |
| 121. KAPITANA Cī. 15, 126 | Flowering peepul tree <i>Thespesia populnea</i> Solard. | Extract of the root and bark used in medicated ghee | Bleeding piles, pain in the rectal region, etc. |
| 122. KAPITTHA Cī. 6, 35, etc. Syn.: Dantaphala, Gandhaphala | Wogd-apple tree <i>Feronia elephantum</i> Corr. | Powdered leaves made into linctus with honey; the fruits used alone or in prescriptions (internal) | Urinary disorders, chronic skin diseases, toxicosis, etc. |
| 123. KARAMARDA Vi. 8, 140, etc. Syn.: Jātipuṣpa, Karamardaka | Bengal currant <i>Carrisa carandas</i> Linn. | A decoction of the fruits used in prescriptions (internal) | Disorders of the first humor |
| 124. KARAṆJA Śā. 3, 3, etc. | Indian beech tree <i>Pongamia glabra</i> Vent. | The leaves soaked in ox-bile and made into ointment; dried powder in prescriptions (internal) | Dermatosis, pain in stomach and spleen, ear-ache, etc. |
| 125. KĀRAVELLIKA Vi. 8, 143 | Bitter-gourd plant <i>Momordica charantia</i> Linn. | The decoction of the fruits and leaves as ingredient of enema or in prescriptions (internal) | Cough, haemothermia, etc. |
| 126. KARAVĪRA Śā. 3, 15, etc. Syn.: Vīrā, Vīraka, Dibyapuṣpa | Roseberry spurge plant <i>Nerium odoratum</i> Soland. | A decoction of the root-bark in water in prescriptions (internal) | Skin diseases, toxicosis, wounds, etc. |
| 127. KARCURA Śā. 27, 155 | Zedoary tree or Sati plant <i>Curcuma zedoaria</i> Rosc. | The fruit without the rind taken alone | Cough, hiccup piles, etc.; as appetizer |
| 128. KARĪRA Cī. 30, 82, etc. Syn.: Tikṣaṇṭaka | Caper plant <i>Capponis aphylla</i> Roth. | The decoction of the leaves as ingredient of vaginal douche, or rectal enema | Morbid discharges from the vagina; retention of urine, stool and flatus |
| 129. KARKANDHU Śā. 4, 13, etc. Syn.: Kartandhuka | Wild jujuba plant <i>Zizyphus erophila</i> Mill. | A decoction of the plant used in prescriptions or in warm enema (internal and external) | As purgative |
| 130. KARKATAŚRṆGĪ Cī. 17, 101, etc. Syn.: Karkatākhyā, Kuliraśrṅgāya | <i>Rhus succedanea</i> Linn. | The powdered nut in prescriptions (internal) | Cough, hiccup, nausea |
| 131. KARKATAKĪ Śā. 27, 100 | <i>Momordica cochinealis</i> Spreng. | The cooked fruit used as an article of food | As an aid to elimination |

TABLE 3
Medicinal Plants and Plant Products and their Uses—(Contd.)

| Name in Caraka; reference, and synonyms if any | Modern and botanical names | Mode of use | Medicinal uses in |
|---|--|---|--|
| 132. KARKOTAKA Ci. 3, 189 | <i>Monardica dioica</i> Roxb. | Leaves and fruits cooked as vegetables | Fever; as an astringent |
| 133. KĀRPĀSA Ci. 26, 69, etc. Syn.: Kārpāsī, Pīcū | Levanine cotton tree <i>Gossypium herbaceum</i> Linn. | A decoction of the root-bark used in prescriptions (internal and external) | Dysuria, scabies, and scrofula |
| 134. KARPŪRA Ci. 28, 153 | <i>Limniphila gratisina</i> Blume | The entire plant compounded into medicinal oil (internal) | Consumption, sallow complexion; as vitalizer |
| 135. KARVUDĀRA Śr. 27, 99, etc. Syn.: Kovidāra, Svetakāncana, Vanarāja | White mountain ebony <i>Bauhinia racemosa</i> Lamk. | As an article of food | Hemorrhemia, haemorrhage; as an aid to elimination |
| 136. KĀŚA Śr. 4, 12, etc. Syn.: Śaradā, Kāśī, Camarapuspikā | Thatch grass <i>Sacharum spontaneum</i> Linn. | A decoction of the grass (internal) | Senility, fever; as promoter of lactation |
| 137. KĀSAMARDA Ci. 18, 117, etc. Syn.: Kāsāri, Kāsamardaka | Senna sophora plant <i>Cassia sophora</i> Linn. or <i>Senna purpuria</i> Roxb. | The entire plant as an ingredient of medicated ghee | Cough, female diseases, etc. |
| 138. KĀSMARI Ci. 26, 167 Syn.: Kāsmariya, Kāsmūrī, Mahābhadrā, Bhadrā | White teak <i>Gmelina arborea</i> Linn. | A paste of the leaves as ingredient of medicated ghee | Stiffness of the back, facial paralysis, hoarseness, etc. |
| 139. KASERUKA Śr. 3, 21, etc. Syn.: Kaseru | Tiger-nut or rush-nut tree <i>Scirpus groisus</i> Linn. or <i>S. kyoor</i> Clarke | A paste of the tubers (external and internal) | Rheumatism, haemorrhopia, wasting diseases, etc. |
| 140. KATAKA Ci. 26, 251, etc. Syn.: Ambuprasādāna, Toyaprasādhaphala | Clearing-nut tree <i>Styrachis foldatorum</i> Linn. | A paste of the seeds used in ointment | Eye-diseases, failing eyesight, discharges from eyes, etc. |
| 141. KATABHĪ Ci. 9, 70, etc. Syn.: Pāṭali, Kaudrāyāmā | White siris <i>Albizia procera</i> Benth. | The powdered bark made into a paste with goat's urine along with other ingredients (internal) | Intestinal worms, toxicosis, oedema, urinary disorders, etc. |
| 142. KATPHALĀ Śr. 28, 152 | Bay-berry tree <i>Myrica nagi</i> Thunb. | The bark used in sweetened decoctions (internal) | Bronchial asthma, cough, diarrhoea, etc. |
| 143. KATTAPHALA Ci. 28, 152 | Musk mallow <i>Hibiscus abelmoschus</i> Linn. | A decoction of the seeds used in prescriptions (internal) | Vomiting, spleen disorders, pectoral lesions, etc. |

TABLE 3: MEDICINAL PLANTS & PLANT PRODUCTS

| | | | |
|--|--|--|--|
| 144. KATTAROHINI Śū. 23, 19, etc. Syn.: Sataparvā, Kaṭuka, Sakulādani, Araṇja, Akarabūya | Hellebore plant <i>Picramnia kurroo</i> Royle | A decoction of the roots and tubers in prescriptions (internal) | Dermatosis, jaundice, piles; as a purifying agent for breast-milk |
| 145. KAṬVANGA Śū. 25, 40, etc. | Indian calceanthus tree <i>Ailanthus excelsa</i> Roxb. | A decoction of the leaves in pres- criptions (internal) | Menstrual disorders, pectoral lesions, diarrhoea, etc. |
| 146. KEŚARA Ci. 2/1, 32, etc. Syn.: Nāgakeśara, Keśari, Tuṅgi | Fragrant poon <i>Ochrocarpus longifolius</i> Hook & Benth. | The powdered, dried buds used in prescriptions (internal) | Irregular, fever, jaundice, etc. |
| 147. KHADIRA Ci. 4, 70, etc. Syn.: Sonavalka | Catechu tree <i>Acacia catechu</i> Willd. | The flowers or the fermented wine from the resinous exudate used in prescriptions (internal) | Haemothermia, urinary disorders, blood poisoning |
| 148. KHARJURA Śū. 23, 38, etc. | Date palm <i>Phoenix sylvestris</i> Roxb. | The dried fruits as food or in fer- mented liquors | Alcoholism, wasting diseases, trauma, erysipelas, etc. |
| 149. KIRĀTATIṬIKTA Śū. 4, 12, etc. Syn.: Kirātātūka, Kaṭutika, Tṛṇanmba | Chiretta plant <i>Suerbia chirata</i> Ham. | The entire plant used in paste or decoction (internal) | Fever; for purification of blood and breast-milk |
| 150. KODRAVA Śū. 21, 25, etc. | Common millet <i>Paspalum scrobiculatum</i> Linn. | Used as cereal food | Piles, cough, obesity, etc. |
| 151. KADARYA Śū. 4, 10, etc. Syn.: Kaitarya | Curry-need plant <i>Murraya koenigii</i> Spreng. | The leaves and barks used in decoctions (internal) | Intestinal worms, dysuria, hoarse- ness |
| 152. KOṢĀMRA Ci. 30, 82 | Gum lac tree <i>Schleichera brijunga</i> Willd. | The expressed oil used as ingredient of medicated applications (ex- ternal) | All morbid discharges from the vagina |
| 153. KRAMUKA Śū. 25, 49, etc. Syn.: Jīmapatra | Betel-nut <i>Areca catechu</i> Linn. | A paste of the nut with sandal wood, or in decoction with other drugs (internal) | Bronchial asthma, anacmia, anorexia, skin diseases |
| 154. KRṢṢASĀIREYAKA Ci. 26, 268 | Purple nail-dye plant <i>Barleria strigosa</i> Willd. | A decoction of the plant, used in prescriptions (external) | All eye-affections, skin discolora- tions, etc. |
| 155. KRṢṢASĀNA Ci. 26, 269 | Flax-hemp plant <i>Crotalaria verrucosa</i> Linn. | The juice of the plant, used in pres- criptions (external) | As above |
| 156. KRĀVEDHANA Śū. 1, 83, etc. Syn.: Koṣṭaki, Mrdāṅgaphala | Bitter luffa plant <i>Luffa acutangula</i> Roxb. | The fruits and seeds used in pres- criptions (internal); the flowers fermented as wine | As purgative and emetic; as tonic |
| 157. KṢAVAKA Vi. 7, 17, etc. Syn.: Kṣava, Ugra | Succize-wort <i>Centipeda orbicularia</i> Lour. | Extract of the seeds and leaves, used in prescriptions (internal and external) | Helmintiasis, fever, dermatosis, etc. |

TABLE 3
Medicinal Plants and Plant Products and their Uses—(Contd.)

| Name in Caraka; reference, and synonyms if any | Modern and botanical names | Mode of use | Medicinal uses in |
|---|---|---|--|
| 158. KṢĪRĀVALLĪ Vi. 8, 139 | Ring coronet tree <i>Holostemma rhedii</i> Wall. | A decoction of the leaves in milk, used as ingredient of medicinal ghee | Disorders of the second humor |
| 159. KṢĪRAVIDĀRĪ Vi. 8, 139 Syn.: Kṣīralatā | Milky yam <i>Ipomoea digitata</i> Linn. | As above | As above |
| 160. KULĀJTTHĀ Śr. 2, 12, etc. Syn.: Kulittha, Kulatthikā | Horse-grass <i>Dolichos biflorus</i> Linn. | The cooked pulse used as food or as paste in prescriptions (internal) | Misericalis, fever, emaciation, cough, etc. |
| 161. KUMARĀJIVA Śr. 27, 100 | <i>Putranjiva roxburghii</i> Wall. | The leaves used as vegetable | As an aid to elimination |
| 162. KUMMI Vi. 8, 144 | Saffron mango tree <i>Careya arborea</i> Roxb. | A decoction of the leaves, used in prescriptions (internal) | Disorders of the third humor; as astringent and purgative |
| 163. KUMUDA Śr. 27, 117, etc. Syn.: Aravinda, Svetajalaja | White water-lily <i>Nymphaea alba</i> Linn. | The seeds and flowers taken raw | Urinary diseases, alcoholism; as intestinal astringent |
| 164. KUNKUMĀCi. 23, 55, etc. Syn.: Rudhira, Vadraka, Kāsmīra, Agnīsthā | Saffron plant <i>Crocus sativa</i> Linn. | The powdered tendrils as ingredient of pills | Cataract, dimness of vision, night-blindness |
| 165. KUṢMĀNDA Śr. 27, 102 | White gourd plant <i>Benincasa cerifera</i> Savi. | Cooked as food; the plant used as vegetable | As a digestive and as an aid to elimination |
| 166. KUṢṬHA Śr. 3, 4, etc. Syn.: Kuṣṭhika, Puṣṭhara, Kāsmīraja | Indian costus or Orris root <i>Saussurea lappa</i> Clark or <i>Iris florentina</i> Linn. | The roots soaked in ox-bile for external application; decoction or powder in prescriptions (internal) | Anaemia, chronic skin-diseases, toxicosis, colic pain, cardiac disorders, etc. |
| 167. KUSTUMBAKA Vi. 7, 17, etc. Syn.: Dhanya, Dhānyaka, Tumburuka | Coriander plant <i>Coriandrum sativum</i> Linn. | Used in prescriptions and in enemias (internal and external) | Piles, dermatosis, intestinal worms |
| 168. KUSUMBHA Śr. 13, 10, etc. Syn.: Latvā | Safflower plant <i>Carthamus tinctorius</i> Linn. | The seeds or oil used as food or cooking medium; also for local application | Phlegm, urinary gravel, dysuria, insect-bites |
| 169. KUTĀJA Śr. 1, 83, etc. Syn.: Kurchi, Vatsaka, Girmallikā, Kupjatvaka, Sakra | Kurchi plant <i>Holarrhena antisyntrixa</i> Wall. | The bark and seeds used in prescriptions (internal and external) | Skin diseases, haemorrhage, fever, assimilation disorders; as purgative and emetic |
| 170. KUTUMBAKA Śr. 27, 98, etc. | <i>Leucas linifolia</i> Spreng. | The plant cooked as pot-herb | As an aid to elimination |

TABLE 3: MEDICINAL PLANTS & PLANT PRODUCTS

65

| | | | |
|--|---|---|---|
| 171. KOVALA Sz. 4, 10, etc. | Small jujuba plant <i>Zizyphus sativus</i> Gaertn. | The fruits taken alone | As cordial and purgative |
| 172. LAKṢMAṆA Sz. 27, 101 | Mandugora plant <i>Atropa magnadigora</i> Linn. | Cooked as pot-herb | Constipation |
| 173. LĀMAJAJAKA Sz. 3, 29 | Geranium grass <i>Andropogon inuranusya</i> Jons. | The powdered and dried leaves for external application | Minor skin eruptions, body-odour |
| 174. LĀṄGALIKĪ Sz. 8, 38 | Superb lily <i>Ipomoea pectigridis</i> Linn. | Inhalation of the fresh or dried powdered petals; compounded with cow's urine (internal) | Labour pain, pruritus, dermatosis as laxative |
| 175. LASUNA Sz. 2, 3 | Garlic plant <i>Allium sativum</i> Linn. | The spice used alone or in prescriptions (internal and external) | Rhinitis, skin diseases, intestinal worms, leprosy, etc.; as aphrodisiac |
| 176. LAVALĪ Sz. 27, 145 | Star gooseberry tree <i>Phyllanthus distichus</i> Muell. | The fruits used alone | As astringent, cordial and appetizer |
| 177. LAVANGA Ci. 26, 210, etc. Syn.: Lavaṅgaka | Clove plant <i>Eugenia caryophyllata</i> Thunberg | The dried flowers alone or in medicinal oils | Cough, hiccup, vomiting, inflammatory conditions of the mouth and throat, halitosis |
| 178. LODHRA Sz. 3, 5, etc. Syn.: Lodh, Tilvaka | Lodh tree <i>Symplocos racemosa</i> Roxb. | The dried root-bark used in internal and external prescriptions | Obstinate skin diseases, haemorrhemia, urinary diseases; as intestinal astringent |
| 179. LONIKĀ Ci. 14, 123; Syn.: Lonā, Loni | Parschane plant <i>Portulaca oleracea</i> Linn. | The plant cooked as vegetable | Piles |
| 180. MADANA Sz. 1, 81, etc. Syn.: Pīṇḍitaka | Emetic nut <i>Randia diutetorum</i> Lamk. | The nuts and seeds used in various prescriptions, containing honey and rocksalt, for internal use | Fever, piles, dermatosis, chronic rhinitis, coryza, etc.; as emetic and purgative |
| 181. MADAYANTIKĀ Ci. 10, 21, etc. Syn.: Medika | Henna plant <i>Lawsonia alba</i> Lamk. | The entire plant as ingredient of medicinal ghee for internal and external use | Epilepsy, malignant jaundice, grey hairs, etc. |
| 182. MADHUPARNĪ Sz. 3, 21, etc. Syn.: Madhuvr̥ṣa, Madhukapṣpa, Madhukapṣi | Mohua tree; Indian butter tree <i>Bassia latifolia</i> Roxb. | The fruits taken alone or made into alcoholic beverages | Rheumatism, fever, spleen diseases, dyspepsia, etc.; for rejuvenation and virility |
| 183. MAHAMEDĀ Sz. 4, 9/1, etc. Syn.: Śatamūli, Śatāvārī, Śatapadi | Indian asparagus <i>Asparagus racemosa</i> Willd. or <i>A. sermentosa</i> Willd. | Cooked as vegetable; the bark and leaves used in prescriptions (internal) | As analgesic and as an aid to prolongation of life |
| 184. MAHĀŚRĀVANI Ci. 3, 258, etc. Syn.: Mahāśrāvāṇikā, Alambuṣā | East Indian globe-thistle <i>Sphaeralthaus indicus</i> Linn. | A decoction of the plant, used in prescriptions (internal) | Fever, rheumatism; for rejuvenation |

TABLE 3
Medicinal Plants and Plant Products and their Uses—(Contd.)

| Name in Caraka, if any | reference, and synonyms | Modern and botanical names | Mode of use | Medicinal uses in |
|--|-------------------------|---|---|--|
| 185. MAKUṢṬHA Sū. 26, 84, etc. Syn.: Makuṣṭhaka | | Moth bean <i>Phaseolus acutifolius</i> Jach. | The dried beans cooked as food | Fever, haemothermia, consumption and wasting diseases |
| 186. MĀLATĪ Sū. 5, 73, etc. Syn.: Jati, Gandhamālati | | Malabar nutmeg plant <i>Agnesma caryophyllata</i> G. Don. | The stalks used in decoctions; also the essential oil of the petals in prescriptions (external) | Dermatosis, female diseases, etc.; for oral hygiene |
| 187. MĀMSI G. 7, 87, etc. Syn.: Jatāmāpsi, Jati, Jatā, Lomaśā, Nāladā | | Musk-root plant <i>Nardostachys jatamansi</i> De. | The dried roots or leaves used in prescriptions (external and internal) | Skin diseases, piles, rectal prolapse, toxicosis, urinary calculus, etc. |
| 188. MAṆḌŪKAPARNĪ Sū. 27, 95, etc. Syn.: Maṇḍūkapaṇikā, Maṇḍūkī | | Indian pennywort <i>Hydrocotyle asiatica</i> Linn. | A decoction of the leaves used internally | Pectoral lesions, diarrhoea, etc.; for rejuvenation |
| 189. MAṆJĪṢṬHĀ Sū. 4, 10/2, etc. | | Indian madder <i>Rubia cordifolia</i> Linn. | The powdered dried roots and fruits used in prescriptions (internal) | Skin diseases and diseases of the spleen |
| 190. MARICA Sū. 2, 3, etc. | | Black pepper plant <i>Piper nigrum</i> Linn. | The dried seeds used as spice or in prescriptions (internal) | Rhinitis, anaemia, fainting, consumption, cough, etc. |
| 191. MARIṢA Sū. 27, 100 | | Gangetic amaranth plant <i>Amaranthus gangeticus</i> Linn. | Cooked as pot-herb | As an aid to elimination |
| 192. MADHUKA Sū. 2, 7, etc. Syn.: Aṭṭasā, Mādhubasā, Madhuli, Madhuyasthikā, Madhuvastyaśhvā, Yaśthimadhu | | Liquorice plant <i>Glycyrrhiza glabra</i> Linn. | The stalks used alone and in various prescriptions (internal) | Cough, hiccup, fever, spleen disorders; as an aid to rejuvenation |
| 193. MARUBAKA Ka. 1, 23 | | Sweet marjoram <i>Origanum marjorana</i> Linn. | A paste of the seeds in prescriptions (internal) | As emetic |
| 194. MĀSĀ Sū. 2, 28, etc. Syn.: Kuruvinda | | Black-gram plant <i>Phaseolus mungo</i> Linn. | As ingredient of gruel, decoctions, medicinal oil, etc. (internal) | Suppurations, rheumatism, etc.; as an aid to prolongation of youth |
| 195. MĀSĀPARNĪ Sū. 4, 9, etc. Syn.: Vajranūli, Māsaapaṇikā, Rṣyaprokta | | <i>Teremus habitatis</i> Spreng. | Cooked as food; the paste as ingredient of prescriptions (internal) | Fever, rheumatic conditions; for longevity |
| 196. MASŪRA Sū. 27, 28, etc. Syn.: Masuraka | | <i>Lens esculenta</i> Moench. | Cooked as food or as ingredient of prescriptions (internal) | Gripping pain, haemothermia, spleen diseases, etc. |

TABLE 3: MEDICINAL PLANTS & PLANT PRODUCTS

| | | | |
|---|--|--|--|
| 197. MATSYĀSAKA Ci. 1/3, 24 | <i>Alternanthera sessilis</i> R. Br. | The entire plant used in prescriptions (external and internal) | As an aid to memory, intelligence, and bright complexion |
| 198. MĀTULANGA Śā. 4, 10, etc. | Pomelo tree <i>Citrus decumana</i> Linn. | The tendrils of the flowers used internally | Nausea, anaemia, colic pain, jaundice, suppurated conditions, etc. |
| 199. MEDĀ Śā. 4, 9/1, etc. | <i>Litsea sebitera</i> Pers. | The sap or a decoction of the bark, used in prescriptions (internal) | Dysentery, diarrhoea, rheumatism; as promotor of longevity |
| 200. MESĀŚRŅGĪ Ci. 3, 267, etc. Syn.: Meṣaśrṅga, Meṣavalli | Indian screw tree <i>Héltères isora</i> Linn. | A decoction of the leaves, used in prescriptions (internal) | Fever |
| 201. MRGALINDIKĀ Śā. 25, 49 | Chinese gooseberry tree <i>Aerhaea caranbola</i> Linn. | The fruits fermented to a beer-like liquor | Insomnia, depression, anorexia, etc. |
| 202. MUDGA Śā. 21, 25 | Green gram <i>Phaseolus radiatus</i> Linn. or <i>P. aurea</i> Frain or <i>P. sublobatus</i> Roxb. | Used as a pulse in diet | Excessive obesity, urinary diseases, etc.; as a nourishing food |
| 203. MUDGAPARNĪ Ci. 7, 123, etc. Syn.: Mudgaparnini | <i>Phaseolus trilobus</i> Ait. | As above | Dermatosis, rheumatic conditions, etc.; for longevity |
| 204. MUKULAKA Śā. 7, 123, etc. | Edible pine tree <i>Pinus gerardiana</i> Wall. | The plant used in decoctions (internal) | Suppurated swellings, urinary diseases, etc. |
| 205. MŪLAKA Śā. 27, 169, etc. Syn.: Mahākanda | Garden radish <i>Raphanus sativus</i> Linn. | The tender tubers taken cooked or used in prescriptions (external and internal) | Discordance of the three humors (tranquillizer); skin diseases, oedema, alcoholism, etc. |
| 206. MUNJĀTAKA Ci. 22, 30, etc. | Salep or salem plant <i>Eulophia campestris</i> Wall. | The juice of the roots, used alone, in prescriptions, and in enema (internal and external) | Morbid thirst, leucorrhoea, irregular fever, etc.; as aphrodisiac |
| 207. MŪRVĀ Śā. 11, 11, etc. Syn.: Mūrvi, Guḍuci | <i>Sansieria roxburghia</i> Schott. | The dried flowers and leaves used in prescriptions (internal) | Fever, vomiting, cough, etc.; as appetizer |
| 208. MUṢKAKA Ci. 15, 189, etc. | Parula tree <i>Stenospermum sauvolens</i> De. | The alkaline ash of the leaves and bark, used in prescriptions | Anaemia, piles, all types of throat affections |
| 209. MUṢṬĀ Śā. 3, 5, etc. Syn.: Musta, Mustaka | Nut grass <i>Cyperus rotundus</i> Linn. | The grass dried, powdered and soaked in ox-bile, used in prescriptions (internal and external) | Obstinate skin diseases, wounds, paralytic conditions, urinary diseases, etc. |
| 210. NĀDĪ Śā. 27, 97 | <i>Ipomoea aquatica</i> Forsk. | Cooked as pot-herb | As digestive and regulator of bile secretion |
| 211. NĀGABALĀ Ci. 1/1, 45, etc. Syn.: Kṣaragandhā | Gingo-fruit tree <i>Sida spinosa</i> Linn. | A decoction of the dried roots, used in prescriptions (internal) | Seminal weakness, general debility, chest affections, etc. |

TABLE 3
Medicinal Plants and Plant Products and their Uses—(Contd.)

| Name in Caraka; reference, and synonyms if any | Modern and botanical names | Mode of use | Medical uses in |
|--|---|---|--|
| 212. NĀGARANGA Śr. 27, 156 | Orange tree <i>Citrus aurantium</i> Linn. | The fruits used alone | As cordial and digestive |
| 213. NALA Cī. 4, 103, etc. | Nodding reed <i>Phragmites karka</i> Trin. | A decoction of the reeds, used in prescriptions (internal and external) | Haemothermia, fever, herpes, erysipelas, etc. |
| 214. NĀLIKĀ Cī. 23, 152 | Hairy onosma tree <i>Onosma schoides</i> Linn. | The buds used as ingredient of medicinal oil (internal) | Cough, consumption, shallow complexion, pectoral lesions, etc. |
| 215. NANDITAKA Vī. 8, 140 | Oval-leaved fig tree <i>Ficus retusa</i> Linn. | The dried fruits as ingredient of prescriptions (internal) | Imbalance of the humors (tranquillizer) |
| 216. NAVAMĀLIKĀ Cī. 26, 184 | Jasmine <i>Jasminum sambac</i> Ait. | The petals and leaves as ingredients of nasal medication | Affections of the head |
| 217. NĪVĀRA Cī. 4, 36, etc. Syn.: Munkihānya, Trṇadhānya | Wild rice plant <i>Hygryza aristata</i> Ness. | The cereal used as food | Haemothermia |
| 218. NICULĀ Śr. 2, 10, etc. Syn.: Hījāla, Dhātrīphala | Hizal tree <i>Borriginia acutangula</i> Gaertn. | The fruits and leaves used in alkaline decoction or paste in prescriptions (internal) | Abdominal and splenic disorders, jaundice, etc.; as purgative |
| 219. NIKOGAKA Śr. 27, 157 | Levanine pistachio-nut tree <i>Pistacia vera</i> Linn. | The dried and shelled nuts used as diet | Anaemia, wasting diseases; as roborant and aphrodisiac |
| 220. NĪLIKĀ Cī. 26, 12, etc. Syn.: Nīla | Indigo plant <i>Indigofera tinctoria</i> Linn. | The leaves as ingredient of rectal suppository or enema | Retention of urine, flatus, acute constipation |
| 221. NIMBA Śr. 3, 3, etc. Syn.: Nimbaka, Sutiktaka | Margosa tree <i>Azadirachta indica</i> Juss. | Paste or decoction of all parts of the plant, used in prescriptions (external and internal) | Skin diseases, urinary diseases, fever, and a large number of other ailments |
| 222. NIRGUNDI Śr. 4, 11, etc. Syn.: Nīlanirguṇḍī, Sidhuvara | Chaate tree <i>Vitex negundo</i> Linn. | Paste of the tubers and leaves, used in prescriptions (external) | Neuralgic pain in the supraclavical region, sinus, fistula, scabies, etc. |
| 223. NIṢPĀVA Śr. 27, 100, etc. Syn.: Sumbi | Goa-bean plant <i>Dolichos lablab</i> Linn. | The seeds cooked as vegetable | Irregular bowel movements |
| 224. PADMAKA Śr. 3, 24, etc. Syn.: Padmagandhi | Bird cherry <i>Prunus paddum</i> Roxb. | The root-stalks or the fruits used in prescriptions (external and internal) | Headache, fever, cough, rheumatic conditions, etc. |

TABLE 3: MEDICINAL PLANTS & PLANT PRODUCTS

| | | | |
|---|--|--|---|
| 225. PALĀNDU Śā. 27, 175, etc. Syn.: Raktatanda | Onion plant <i>Allium cepa</i> Linn. | The tubers and the stalks in vegetable salad and soups, or taken alone | Hemorrhage, scanty stools, cough, hiccup, etc.; as appetizer and aphrodisiac |
| 226. PĀLANGKYA Śā. 27, 100 | Indian spinach <i>Spinacea oleracea</i> Linn. | The plant cooked as pot-herb | Irregular bowel movements |
| 227. PALĀSA Śā. 2, 13, etc. Syn.: Kīṇśūka | Bengal kino tree <i>Butea frondosa</i> Roxb. | The juice of the roots, bark, leaves, etc. in external ointments and ingredient of medicinal ghee | Acute constipation, colic, dysuria, skin diseases, etc. |
| 228. PANASA Śā. 27, 143, etc. Syn.: Kaṇṭhphala | Jack-fruit tree <i>Artocarpus integrifolia</i> Linn. | The fully ripe fruits as diet | Intestinal astringent |
| 229. PARPATAKA Śā. 27, 97, etc. Syn.: Baratikta, Pāṇḍuparyāya, Parpaṭa | Trailing rungia <i>Rungia repens</i> Neus. | Decoction of the leaves, used in prescriptions (internal) | Fever, haemorrhemia, diarrhoea, etc. |
| 230. PARUSAKA Śā. 4, 13, etc. Syn.: Paruṣa | Asiatic grevia <i>Grewia asiatica</i> Linn. | The fruits used alone or in prescriptions; decoction of the leaves, roots or bark, used internally | Fever, acute alcoholism, spleen diseases, cough, rheumatism, etc.; as purgative |
| 231. PĀŚĀNAMEDĀ Śā. 4, 15, etc. Syn.: Śilāmedū, Pāśānabhedaka, Pāśānabhedī | Indian rock-foil <i>Coleus amboinicus</i> Lour. | The dried and powdered leaves with cow's urine (internal) | Urinary stones; as diuretic |
| 232. PĀṬALA Śā. 2, 11, etc. Syn.: Pāṭali | Trumpet-flower tree <i>Stereospermum chelonoides</i> De. | The decoction or paste of flowers and leaves, used in prescriptions (internal) | Constipation, fever, toxic conditions, etc. |
| 233. PĀTHĀ Śā. 3, 204, etc. Syn.: Ekantilā, Kucelā, Vṛttaparṇī | <i>Stephania hernandifolia</i> Walp. | The roots and leaves used in prescriptions (internal) | Fever, urinary disorders, consumption, piles, etc. |
| 234. PAṬOLA Śā. 3, 8, etc. | Wild snake-gourd, or pulbul plant <i>Trichosanthes dioeca</i> Roxb. | Decoction of the leaves, used internally; the gourd cooked as vegetable | Pruritus, pimples; all types of fever, diarrhoea, etc.; as appetizer |
| 235. PATRA Śā. 3, 29, etc. | Cinnamon tree <i>Cinnamomum tamala</i> Fr. Nees. | The dried leaves and bark used in prescriptions (external and internal) | Body-odour, fever, anaemia, cardiac disorders, etc.; as an aid to rejuvenation |
| 236. PATTURA Śā. 27, 100, etc. | Coxcomb tree <i>Celosia argentea</i> Linn. | A decoction of the seeds, used in prescriptions; the plant cooked as pot-herb (internal) | Dysuria, fever, habitual constipation, etc. |
| 237. PAYASYĀ Śā. 4, 9, etc. | White yam <i>Ipomoea paniculata</i> R. Br. | Used as vegetable | Emaciation, debility, loss of voice, etc.; as an aid to rejuvenation |
| 238. PHALGU Śā. 27, 128, etc. Syn.: Manjula | <i>Ficus carica</i> Linn. | A paste of the figs in prescriptions; also cooked as vegetable | Emaciation and debility; urinary stone |

TABLE 3
Medicinal Plants and Plant Products and their Uses—(Contd.)

| Name in Caraka; reference, and synonyms | Modern and botanical names | Mode of use | Medicinal uses in |
|--|--|--|--|
| 239. PHENILA Ci. 29, 110 Syn.: Ariṣṭa | Soap-nut tree <i>Sapindus trifoliatus</i> Linn. or <i>S. mukorossi</i> Gaertn. | A decoction of seeds and fruits, used in prescriptions (internal) | Fever, rheumatism |
| 240. PHANJĪ Sū. 27, 98 | Bind-weed <i>Rives ornata</i> Choisy. | Cooked as pot-herb | As an aid to elimination |
| 241. PILU Sū. 2, 4, etc. Syn.: Pīluka | Tooth-brush tree <i>Salvadora persica</i> Linn. | The fruits used alone or in prescriptions (internal) | Rhinitis, fainting, hemicrania, etc.; as purgative |
| 242. PIPPALI Sū. 2, 3, etc. Syn.: Māgadhi, Vaidēhi | Long-pepper plant <i>Piper longum</i> Linn. | The dried flowers, fruits and roots used as ingredients of prescriptions; also as spice in cooking | Used in a large number of diseases; as digestive |
| 243. PLAKṢA Sū. 4, 15, etc. Syn.: Karpari, Pīṇa | Yellow-barked fig tree <i>Ficus infectoria</i> Roxb. | A decoction of the tender leaves, used in prescriptions (internal) | Diarrhoea, haemothermia, seminal weakness, etc. |
| 244. PRĀCINĀMALAKA Sū. 27, 146 | Indian prune <i>Flacouria catapiracta</i> Roxb. | The fruits used alone | After-effects of poisoning |
| 245. PRAVĀLAJĀTĪ Ci. 3, 207, etc. | Chameli tree <i>Jasminum grandiflorum</i> Linn. | The sprouts or dried flowers used in prescriptions (external) | Coryza, nasal haemorrhage, fever, dermatosis, etc. |
| 246. PRIYĀLA Sū. 3, 21, etc. Syn.: Priyalaka, Rājātana | Buchanon's mango <i>Buchanania latifolia</i> Roxb. | The fruits used alone; the expressed oil in prescriptions (external) | Rheumatism, urticaria, fever, morbid thirst, etc. |
| 247. PRIYANGU Sū. 4, 15, etc. Syn.: Priyaka, Priyā | Perfumed cherry <i>Aglala roxburghiana</i> Miq. | The fruits used alone; the seeds used as cereal | Fever, haemothermia, dermatosis, piles, ear-ache, etc.; as intestinal astringent |
| 248. PRṢṢĪPARṢĪ Sū. 2, 11, etc. Syn.: Prṥhakparṃi, Simhapuṣpi | Pointed-leaved uraria plant <i>Uraria lagopoides</i> De. | The entire plant used in prescriptions (internal) | Misperistalsis, diarrhoea, fever, cough, consumption, etc. |
| 249. PRTHVĪKĀ Sū. 5, 20, etc. Syn.: Vṛhadelā, Prthvī, Elāki, Indrāṇi Śhulāilā | Greater cardamom <i>Amomum subulatum</i> Roxb. | The dried fruits used alone or in prescriptions (internal) | Hemicrania, rhinitis, fever, skin eruptions, etc. |
| 250. PUGA Sū. 5, 77 | Betel-nut tree <i>Areca catechu</i> Linn. | The dried nuts used alone | Halitosis, loss of appetite |

| | | | |
|---|---|--|--|
| 251. PUNARNAVĀ Śā. 2, 12, etc. Syn.: Svetamūla, Sveta-punarnavā, Vṛścīrā, Tāmalakya | Pig weed or Hog weed <i>Boerhaavia repens</i> Linn. (Varieties: <i>B. diffusa</i> & <i>B. procumbens</i>) | A decoction of the leaves and roots, used in prescriptions (internal) | Constipation, skin diseases, oedema, urinary diseases; as an aid to rejuvenation |
| 252. RĀJĀDANA Cī. 30, 97 | Indian ape-flower tree <i>Mimusops hexandra</i> Roxb. | Paste of the leaves and fruits, used in medicated ghee | Menstrual disorders |
| 253. RAKTAGANDANA Cī. 30, 92 | Red sandal-wood tree <i>Pterocarpus santalinus</i> Linn. | A decoction of the leaves, or the powdered bark, used internally | Bleeding piles, diarrhoea, morbid menstrual discharges |
| 254. RASNĀ Śā. 3, 22, etc. Syn.: Nākulī, Gandhanākulī, Rasanā | Indian groundsel <i>Vanda roxburghii</i> Br. | Paste of the roots and rhizomes, used in prescriptions (internal and external) | Rheumatic conditions, chest-pains, fever, oedema, heart diseases, etc. |
| 255. ROHINI Śā. 4, 10, etc. Syn.: Vivasā, Patrāṅga | Indian red wood tree <i>Symida febrifuga</i> Juss. | Decoction of the bark, used in prescriptions (internal and ex- ternal) | Debility, chronic skin diseases; as a purifier for breast-milk |
| 256. ROHIṢA Cī. 3, 267, etc. | Geranium grass <i>Andropogon schoenanthus</i> Linn. | A decoction of the grass and roots, used in prescriptions (internal) | Fever, abdominal diseases, splenic disorders, jaundice, etc. |
| 257. ROHITAKA Cī. 16, 81, etc. Syn.: Sadāpuspā, Sālmalikā | White cedar <i>Amora rohitaka</i> W. & A. | The powdered bark, used in decoction as ingredient of medi- cinal ghee, etc. | Urinary disorders, enlarged spleen, jaundice, anaemia, intestinal worms, etc. |
| 258. RUHA Cī. 23, 80, etc. Syn.: Vṛkṣaruha, Śekhara, Nilāvallī | Wild orchid <i>Loranthus falcatus</i> Linn. | A decoction of the leaves, used in prescriptions (internal) | Cataract, night blindness, tumours, scabies, etc. |
| 259. SĀILEYAKA Cī. 3, 267, etc. Syn.: Sāileya, Śilādadrū, Śailaka | Lichen <i>Parmelia parvata</i> Esche. | In prescriptions (external and internal) | Fever, toxicosis, disorders of the first humor |
| 260. SĀIREYA Śā. 14, 32 | Yellow nail-dye plant <i>Barleria prionitis</i> Linn. | Paste of the leaves as ingredient of hot poultices and steam bath | Stiffness of limbs, enlargement of scrotum, sciatica, etc. |
| 261. SĀIVALA Cī. 4, 103, etc. Syn.: Jalaja | Moss <i>Vallisneria spiralis</i> Linn. | In prescriptions (external and internal) | Haemothermia, giddiness, morbid thirst, rheumatism |
| 262. ŚĀLA Śā. 4, 18, etc. Syn.: Sarja, Sarjarasa, Sarjaka, Dīrgha- śākha, Asvakarna | Sal tree <i>Shorea robusta</i> Gaertn. | Decoction of the resin and leaves, used internally | Urinary disorders, pectoral lesions, seminal weakness; as sedative |
| 263. SĀLEYA Cī. 4, 75 | Common fennel or sweet fennel <i>Foeniculum vulgare</i> Gaertn. or <i>Trigonella foenum gracum</i> Linn. | The bark made into paste with sandal-wood and used externally or internally | Bronchial asthma |

TABLE 3
Medicinal Plants and Plant Products and their Uses—(Contd.)

| Name in Caraka; reference, and synonyms if any | Modern and botanical names | Mode of use | Medicinal uses in |
|---|--|--|---|
| 264. ŚĀLAPARNĪ Sū. 2, 11, etc. Syn.: Triparṇī, Śthira, Dirghamūla, Vidarigandha | Tick trefoil <i>Desmodium gangeticum</i> De. | Decoction of the leaves, used in prescriptions (internal) | Constipation, diarrhoea, oedema, fever, etc. |
| 265. ŚĀLLAKĪ Sū. 4, 15, etc. Syn.: Kuntarika, Rasāla | Indian olibanum <i>Boswellia serrata</i> Roxb. | A paste or decoction of the bark alone or soaked in ghee (internal) | Cough, hiccup, nausea, etc. |
| 266. ŚĀLMALĪ Sū. 27, 99, etc. Syn.: Kukkuṭi, Nīrgandhapuṣpī, Raktapuṣpaka, Moca | Red silk cotton tree <i>Bombax malabaricum</i> De. | The fresh flowers or resin used (internal and external) | Haemothermia, dysentery, rectal prolapse, etc. |
| 267. SAMANGĀ Cī. 4, 76, etc. Syn.: Śamīpatra, Prasāriṇī, Saṃkocinī | Sensitive plant <i>Mimosa pudica</i> Linn. | Paste or decoction in prescriptions (external and internal) | Haemothermia, piles, diarrhoea, etc. |
| 268. SAMĪ Sū. 25, 49, etc. Syn.: Maṅgalya, Śiva, Supatrā, Śaṅkupa-likā | <i>Prosopis spicigera</i> Linn. | The fruits and bark used in decoction (internal) | As intestinal astringent |
| 269. ŚANA Sū. 27, 99, etc. Syn.: Kapuṭika, Tvaksāra | Bengal hemp plant <i>Crotalaria juncea</i> Linn. | The leaves cooked as vegetable; a decoction of the flowers and roots, used in prescriptions (internal) | Dysentery, irregular bowel movements |
| 270. ŚANKHAPUṢPĪ Cī. 1/1, 58, etc. Syn.: Medhya, Kīrtī, Śaṅkhyakusumā, Śītapuṣpī | Dankuni plant <i>Cenchrus decussata</i> Roem. | The leaves used in prescriptions (internal) | Cough, rheumatic conditions, etc. |
| 271. ŚANKHINĪ Sū. 1, 81, etc. Syn.: Tiktala, Aśpīḍaka, Yavaṭikā | <i>Clanlipis acaulis</i> H. & K. | Decoction of the fruits as ingredient of prescriptions and enema (internal and external) | Disorders of assimilation as purgative and roborant |
| 272. SAPTAPARNA Sū. 3, 4, etc. Syn.: Śārada, Devavīṣa, Madagandhā | Dita <i>Alstonia scholaris</i> R. Br. | A paste of the bark, used in ointments | Chronic skin diseases, urinary diseases, oedema, etc. |
| 273. SARALA Cī. 3, 267, etc. | Himalayan pine tree <i>Pinus longifolia</i> Roxb. | A decoction of the leaves and bark, used in prescriptions (internal) | Fever, loss of appetite, facial paralysis, etc. |
| 274. SARIVA Sū. 4, 10, etc. Syn.: Nagajihvā, Anantā, Anantamūlā | Indian sarsaparilla <i>Hemidesmus indicus</i> Br. | The leaves used alone in decoction (internal) | Sallow complexion, loss of voice, dysentery, cough, menstrual disorders, etc. |
| 275. SARŚAPA Sū. 2, 3, etc. Syn.: Rājajaksavaka, Kattaka | Rape plant <i>Brassica campestris</i> Linn. (Varieties— <i>B. sarson</i> , <i>B. juncea</i> , <i>B. napus</i> .) | The powdered seeds or the expressed oil used alone or in prescriptions or in suppositories (external and internal) | Rhinitis, hemicrania, pruritus, dysuria, coryza, acute intestinal gas formation, etc. |

TABLE 3: MEDICINAL PLANTS & PLANT PRODUCTS

73

| | | | |
|--|---|--|--|
| 276. ŚATAKUSUMA Ci. 12, 16 | <i>Pseudomorus graveolens</i> Benth. | Extract of the plant as ingredient of enema | Inguinal swelling, colic pain, menorrhagia, piles, etc. |
| 277. ŚATALĀ Ci. 13, 128 | <i>Acacia concinna</i> De. | The roots used in prescriptions (internal) | Abdominal diseases, poisoning, hardened spleen, oedema, jaundice, etc. |
| 278. SIGRA Śz. 3, 8, etc. Syn.: Sobhānjana, Sigrū, Haritāśaka, Raktaka | Drum-stick plant <i>Moringa pterygospermus</i> Gaertn. | The powdered bark, root, and dried sap used in prescriptions or in steaming mixtures (internal and external) | Anosmia, fainting, chronic skin eruptions, painful piles, etc. |
| 279. SIMBITAKA Śz. 17, 142 | Apple tree <i>Pyrus malus</i> Linn. | The fruit used alone | As intestinal astringent |
| 280. ŚIMSĀPA Śz. 1/2, 12, etc. Syn.: Kṛpāśūpaka | Rose-wood tree <i>Dalbergia sissoo</i> Roxb. | The expressed juice of the leaves or tender bark, used in prescriptions (internal) | Senility, debility |
| 281. ŚIRIṢA Śz. 2, 5, etc. | Siris tree <i>Albizia lebbek</i> Benth. | Powdered seeds, bark and leaves used alone or in prescriptions (external and internal) | Hemicrania, urinary anomalies, chronic skin diseases, toxic conditions, etc. |
| 282. ŚLEṢMĀTAKA Śz. 4, 11, etc. Syn.: Bhūkarvudāra, Uddālaka, Selu | Assyrian plum <i>Cordia mixa</i> Roxb. or <i>C. obliqua</i> Willd. | The bark made into ointment for local application | Poisoning; for purification of breast-milk |
| 283. SOMARĀJĪ Śz. 2, 24, etc. Syn.: Somavallī, Somavallikā, Soma, Cāndri | Babchi tree <i>Psoralea corylifolia</i> Linn. | The seeds cooked in gruel, or used in prescriptions (internal) | Toxicosis, night-blindness, tumour, cataract |
| 284. SPRĪKA Ci. 12, 66, etc. Syn.: Kuṭila, Devaputrika, Kuṭika, Nakha-puṭi | Melilot plant <i>Melilotus indica</i> All. | The pulverized seeds as ingredient of pills | Fever, emaciation, obstructed and difficult labour |
| 285. ŚRṆGĀTAKA Ci. 2/2, 14, etc. Syn.: Śṛṅgamūla Trikota, Śṛṅgata | Indian water chestnut <i>Tropha bispinosa</i> Roxb. | The shelled nuts taken alone or in prescriptions (internal) | Impotency, chest-pain, loss of voice, urinary disorders, etc. |
| 286. STHAUNEYAKA Ci. 3, 267, etc. | Glory tree <i>Clorodendron infortunatum</i> Linn. | A decoction of the bark, used internally | Fever; as an emetic |
| 287. SUDHĀ Ci. 5, 107, etc. Syn.: Snuṭ, Guda, Nanda, Nistrinḍapatraka | Thorny milk-hedge or dulk hedge <i>Euphorbia nerifolia</i> Linn. | The milky juice used in prescriptions (internal) | Oedema, piles, gastro-intestinal irritations, etc. |
| 288. SŪKARĪ Ci. 9, 46 | <i>Tacca pinnatifida</i> Fors. or <i>T. integrifolia</i> Ker. | Starch from the tubers, used in medicinal jelly | Epileptic fits, insanity |
| 289. SUNISANNAKA Ci. 18, 81, etc. Syn.: Situmāra, Sitāvārī, Parnaka, Svastika | Marsilia <i>Marsilia quadrifolia</i> Figar. | The sprouts cooked as vegetable | Cough, spastic condition of the leg muscles, etc. |

TABLE 3
Medicinal Plants and Plant Products and their Uses—(Contd.)

| Name in Caraka; reference, and synonyms if any | Modern and botanical names | Mode of use | Medical uses in |
|--|--|--|---|
| 290. SURASA Śr. 3, 8, etc. Syn.: Tulasi, Bhūtaghni, valli, Sulabha, Mañjarikā | Holy basil plant <i>Ocimum sanctum</i> Linn. | A paste or extract of the leaves, used in prescriptions (internal) | Skin eruptions, fever, splenic dis- orders, toxæmia, paralysis, etc. |
| 291. TĀDAKA Śr. 25, 49 | Palmyra palm <i>Berassus jabeltifer</i> Linn. | Various parts fermented into beer- like liquor | Insomnia, depression, anorexia |
| 292. TAGARA C. 6, 27, etc. Syn.: Kuṣṭha, Kālanusārivā, Dipana, Śaṭha | Indian valerian <i>Valeriana hardwickii</i> Wall. | A decoction of the roots, used in prescriptions (internal) | Fever, urinary diseases, poisonous bites, etc. |
| 293. TĀLAMŪLI C. 17, 75 | Black musali plant <i>Carculigo orchitoides</i> Gaertn. | The powdered roots as ingredient of smoking mixture | Cough |
| 294. TĀLISA C. 8, 145, etc. Syn.: Karicchadā, Tāmalakipatra | Silver fir tree <i>Abies ussibiana</i> Lindl. | The powdered leaves used in prescriptions (internal) | Cough, anaemia, digestive dis- orders, colic pain, etc. |
| 295. TĀMĀLA C. 3, 267, etc. Syn.: Gomēdaka, Rāma, Sukumāraka | Mysore gamboge tree <i>Garcinia xanthochymus</i> Hook. | A decoction of the fruits and seeds, used in prescriptions (internal) | Skin eruptions, toxic conditions, etc. |
| 296. TĀMALAKI C. 5, 119, etc. Syn.: Viśvaparni, Bahuphalā, Tāmalikā, Cāraṇi | Feather-foil plant <i>Phyllanthus niruri</i> Linn. | A decoction of the plant, used in prescriptions (internal) | Blood poisoning, jaundice, herpes, etc. |
| 297. TĀMBŪLA Śr. 5, 77, etc. Syn.: Bhujāṅgalatā, Nāgavalli, Nāgini, Tāmbūlavalli | Betel-leaf plant <i>Piper betel</i> Linn. | The leaves chewed along with betel-nut, cloves, etc. | Halitosis |
| 298. TĀNDULA C. 4, 73, etc. Syn.: Akṣata | Rice plant <i>Oryza sativa</i> Linn. | Cereal food; ingredient of gruel, sweetmeat, etc. | As vitalizer and roborant |
| 299. TĀNDULIYAKA C. 23, 198, etc. Syn.: Bahuviryā, Kaṇḍerā, Viśaghna, Mūsaka | Prickly amaranth <i>Amaranthus polygamus</i> Will. | The entire plant cooked as vege- table; also as ingredient of enema | Intoxication, toxic conditions, internal hæmorrhage |
| 300. TANKA Śr. 27, 136 | Pear tree <i>Pyrus communis</i> Linn. | The fruit used alone | As intestinal astringent |
| 301. TARUNI Śr. 10, 31 Syn.: Devakṣara, Bhṛṅgavallabha, Suvṛtta | Cabbage rose <i>Rosa cantifolia</i> Linn. | The petals as ingredient of enema | As above |

TABLE 3: MEDICINAL PLANTS & PLANT PRODUCTS

75

| | | | |
|--|---|--|--|
| 302. TILA Śā. 3, 14, etc. Syn.: Snehaphala | Sesame plant <i>Sesamum indicum</i> Linn. | The expressed oil from seeds, or alkaline ash, used in prescriptions (external and internal) | Skin eruptions, pain in vagina, acute constipation, chest complaints, etc. |
| 303. TILAPARNĪ Cī. 3, 267, etc. | <i>Cynandrodropsis penitaphylla</i> De. | The entire plant and roots used in prescriptions (internal) | Fever |
| 304. TINDUKA Śā. 25, 40, etc. Syn.: Nilāsāra, Tūṇḍuka | False mangosteen <i>Diospyros embroypteris</i> Pers. | The fruits used alone | Urticaria, phlegm, excessive bile secretion, piles, etc. |
| 305. TINJSA Cī. 1/2, 12, etc. Syn.: Citrakṛtī, Śakāṭa | Chariot tree <i>Eugenia dabergerioides</i> Benth. | The freshly-expressed juice of the bark and stalks, used in prescriptions (internal) | Fever, debility; as a vitalizer |
| 306. TRAYAMĀNA Cī. 3, 208, etc. māṇika | Zaitil plant <i>Delphinium zaili</i> Aitch. | Decoction of the plant, used in prescriptions (internal) | Rigor, high body-temperature, splenic disorders, chronic skin diseases, etc. |
| 307. TRNĀSŪNYA Śā. 27, 145, etc. Syn.: Laghupuspa, Haimi, Chinnaruha | Screw pine <i>Pandanus suberifolium</i> Linn. | The flowers used in decoctions | As antitoxic and febrifuge |
| 308. TRVṚTA Śā. 4, 13 | Turpeth plant <i>Operaculina turpethum</i> Manso. | The flowers and bark, used in prescriptions and as ingredient of enema (external and internal) | Skin eruptions, suppurated wounds, fractures, etc.; as laxative |
| 309. TUDA Śā. 27, 135 | Indian mulberry tree <i>Morinda citrifolia</i> Linn. | A decoction of the roots, used in prescriptions (internal) | As liver tonic |
| 310. TUMBĪ Cī. 26, 15, etc. Syn.: Iṣavāku, Alāvu, Phalini, Pindaphala | Bottle gourd <i>Lagenaria vulgaris</i> Seringe. | Infusion of the sprouts, fruits and seeds in milk, used as emetic | Cough, vomiting, poisoning, etc. |
| 311. TURUṢKA Cī. 28, 153 | Storax plant <i>Astringia excelsa</i> Noronha | Liquid exudate as ingredient of medicinal oil (internal) | Cough, consumption, debility, peccatorial lesions, etc. |
| 312. TUVARA Cī. 30, 124 | <i>Asiennia officinalis</i> Linn. | A paste of the seeds for local application | Offensive smell from the vaginal passage |
| 313. TVAC Śā. 3, 28 | Cinnamon (bark) <i>Cinnamomum zeylonicum</i> Bl. | The powdered bark used alone or in prescriptions (internal and external) | Rigor, ear-ache, eye-ache, discharge from the ear, etc. |
| 314. UDAKĪRYAKA Śā. 2, 9 | Prickly wood-climber <i>Caesalpinia digyna</i> Roul. | A decoction of the root, used internally or in enema | Accumulation of morbid matter in the colon; as purgative |
| 315. UDŪMBARA Śā. 5, 22, etc. Syn.: Hemadugdhi, Kṣīravṛkṣa, Kṛmikaṇṭa | Cluster fig tree <i>Ficus glomerata</i> Roxb. | The powdered root-bark used for smoking; or as ingredient of prescriptions (internal) | Eye-ache, ear-ache, dental pain, suppurated conditions, etc. |
| 316. UNCAṬĀKA Śā. 12, 18/7 | Blaffaris plant <i>Blepharis edulis</i> Pers. | Infusion of the plant in milk, used in nutritive enema. | Sexual debility |

TABLE 3
Medicinal Plants and Plant Products and their Uses—(Contd.)

| Name in Caraka; reference, and synonyms if any | Modern and botanical names | Mode of use | Medicinal use, in |
|--|--|--|--|
| 317. UPAKUNCIKĀ Cī. 13, 125, etc. Syn.: Kṛpājiraka, Bhedini, Bahugandhā | Small fennel plant <i>Nigella salina</i> Linn. | The powdered seeds used in prescriptions (internal) | Acute constipation, colic pain, anal fistula, poisonous bites, etc. |
| 318. UPODIKĀ Sū. 2, 33, etc. Syn.: Vśālā, Madāśaka, Upodaki | Malabar spinach <i>Basella rubra</i> Linn. | As pot-herb or as an ingredient of gruel | Intoxication, diarrhoea, rheumatic conditions, etc. |
| 319. UŚĪRA Sū. 4, 10, etc. Syn.: Bahumūlaka, Indragupta, Sugandhimūla, Jaiāmeda | Cuscut grass <i>Andropogon squarrosus</i> Linn. | The powdered leaves or an infusion used in prescriptions (external and internal) | Senility, debility, fever, chronic skin diseases, toxicosis, piles, suppurated conditions, etc. |
| 320. UTPALĀ Sū. 4, 15, etc. Syn.: Nilapatraka, Utpalaka | Blue water-lily <i>Nymphaea stellata</i> Willd. or <i>N. Cyanea</i> Roxb. | The stalks, petals and seeds used in prescriptions (internal and external) | As above |
| 321. VACĀ Sū. 2, 9, etc. Syn.: Ugragandhā, Jaṭilā, Vijayā, Bhadrā, Ikupatrikā | Sweet-flag plant <i>Acorus calamus</i> Linn. | The leaves and stalks in powder form or decoction used in prescriptions (internal) | Skin diseases, haemorrhage, fever, urinary diseases, etc.; as purgative, appetizer and vitalizer |
| *322. BĀLAKA Cī. 17, 124, etc. | Fragrant mallow plant <i>Favonia odorata</i> Willd. | A decoction of the root-bark as ingredient of medicinal syrup or sweetened infusion | Asthma, hiccup, acute nausea, toxicosis, etc. |
| 323. VAMŚA Cī. 21, 125, etc. Syn.: Veqū, Trpadhvaja, Tvakaśira | Spiny bamboo <i>Bambusa arundinacea</i> Retz. | A paste or decoction of the leaves or seeds, used in prescriptions (external and internal) | Acute suppurated conditions, poisonous bites, intestinal worms, excessive fat, etc. |
| 324. VAṆJULA Sū. 4, 18, etc. | Country willow <i>Salix tetrasperma</i> Roxb. | The leaves used in infusion internally, or in enema | Excessive bile secretion; as sedative |
| 325. VARAKA Sū. 27, 14, etc. Syn.: Rukṣa, Sthūlapharaṅgaka | Millet <i>Panicum miliaceum</i> Linn. | Cooked as cereal | As intestinal astringent and tranquilizer |
| 326. VARTAKA Sū. 27, 162, etc. Syn.: Citraphala, Kapṭakini, Vartaku, Hinguli | Brinjal plant <i>Solanum melongena</i> Linn. | Cooked as vegetable | Indigestion, anaemia, cough, etc. |
| 327. VARUNA Cī. 3, 267, etc. Syn.: Kumāraka, Ainarighna | Sacred caper tree <i>Crataeva religiosa</i> Forst. | The sprouts and leaves, in decoction, used in prescriptions (external and internal) | Assimilation disorders, piles, etc. |

TABLE 3: MEDICINAL PLANTS & PLANT PRODUCTS

77

| | | | |
|---|---|---|--|
| 328. VĀSĀ Śr. 3, 3, etc. Syn.: Vāsaka | Malabar nut <i>Adhatoda vasica</i> Nees. | The leaves and flowers, or a decoction, used alone or in prescriptions (internal) | Hiccup, chronic skin diseases, fever, pulmonary consumption, etc. |
| 329. VASTUKA Śr. 27, 88 | White goose-foot plant <i>Chenopodium album</i> Linn. | The entire plant used in decoctions (internal) | Constipation, chest-pain |
| 330. VATA Śr. 4, 15, etc. Syn.: Kairī, Nandi, Suñga, Skandaruha | Banyan tree <i>Ficus bengalensis</i> Linn. | The fruits used alone or dried and powdered to form smoking mixture; also in decoction (internal) | Excessive urination, fever, toxicosis, etc. |
| 331. VĀTĀMA Śr. 27, 157, etc. Syn.: Vātada | Indian almond tree <i>Terminalia catappa</i> Linn. | The seeds used alone or in prescriptions (internal) | Debility, emaciation, wasting diseases, anaemia, etc.; as aphrodisiac |
| 332. VETASA Ā. 3, 258, etc. Syn.: Nikūñcaka | Rattan cane <i>Calamus viminalis</i> Willd. | The leaves cooked as vegetable | Fever with rigor, haemorrhemia, morbid thirst, menstrual disorders, etc. |
| 333. VIDĀNGA Śr. 1, 81, etc. Syn.: Bhasmaka, Ghoṣa, Citrabhija | Embelia plant <i>Embelia ribes</i> Burm f. | Used as dried powder, or the decoction in prescriptions (external and internal) | Chronic skin diseases, dysentery, diarrhoea, etc.; for oral hygiene, and as purgative. |
| 334. VIKĀNGATA Śr. 27, 145, etc. Syn.: Vaikāngata, Kaṇṭaki, Kaṇṭapada, Madhuparṇi, Mrdubhalā | Thorny staff tree <i>Gynostemma montana</i> Benth. | Decoction of the leaves, stalks and fruits, used in prescriptions (internal) | After-effects of poisons |
| 335. VRKṢĀMLA Ā. 11, 85, etc. Syn.: Cuḍāmla, Bījāmla | Wild mangosteen <i>Garcinia indica</i> Choisy. | The fruits used alone or in prescriptions (internal) | Flatulence, oedema, chronic alcoholism, etc.; as cordial |
| 336. VRŚCIKĀLĪ Ā. 9, 47, etc. Syn.: Karkasā, Amara, Kṣtraviṣānikā | Climbing nettle plant <i>Tragia melocurata</i> Linn. | Ingredient of medicinal ghec (internal) | As an aid to memory, intellect and growth of young children |
| 337. VIṢĀNIKĀ Śr. 1, 78, etc. | Stinking swallow-wort plant <i>Doomia extensa</i> R. Br. | A decoction of the plant, used in prescriptions (internal) | Assimilation disorders, constipation; as a purifier of breast-milk |
| 338. YAMĀNĪ Ā. 6, 4 | Bishop's weed <i>Carum copticum</i> Benth. | A decoction of the dried seeds, used in prescriptions (internal) | Indigestion, anaemia, piles, alcoholism, etc. |
| 339. YAVA Śr. 2, 12 | Barley plant <i>Hordeum vulgare</i> Linn. | As cereal food or in gruel | Constipation, throat diseases, dysentery, cough, vomiting, paralysis, etc. |
| 340. YAVAŚĀKA Ā. 3, 222, etc. Syn.: Sukṣmapatra, Tīkṣṇakaṇṭaka | Camel thorn or Khorasan thorn plant <i>Alhagi maurorum</i> Desv. | A decoction of the plant in prescriptions (internal) | Fever, haemorrhemia |
| 341. YŪTHIKĀ Ā. 8, 129, etc. Syn.: Ambaṣṭhā, Balaṣarpā, Cārumodā | Common jasmine <i>Jasminum auriculatum</i> Vahl. | The sprouts cooked as vegetable; the leaves used in decoctions for prescriptions (internal) | Diarrhoea, colic pain, jaundice, etc. |

*Substances Nos. 44 and 322 have not been placed in their proper alphabetical order through mistake.

TABLE 4
Medicinal Substances of Mineral Origin and their Uses

| Name and reference | Modern equivalent | Mode of use or application | Medicinal uses in |
|--|--------------------------------------|--|--|
| 1. ADRIJATU <i>Ci.</i> 16, 78 <i>Syn.:</i> ASMAJATU <i>Ci.</i> 12, 49; 16, 81 GIRIJA <i>Ci.</i> 1/3, 64; 21, 130, etc. ŚILAJATU <i>Sū.</i> 21, 24, etc. ŚILODBHEDA <i>Ci.</i> 15, 113; 30, 90 | Mineral bitumen (exudate from ores) | (a) Internal—in linctus (b) Internal—in decoction (c) Internal—in powder mixture (d) Internal—taken alone (e) Internal—taken mixed with finely powdered diamond and plant-juices | (a) Anaemia, oedema, jaundice, urinary diseases, excessive menstrual flow, fever, consumption, emaciation, etc. (b) Obesity, imbalance of the body humours, debility, etc. (c) Hard cutaneous eruptions, enlarged spleen (d) Intoxication, fainting (e) Malignant skin diseases; as a general remedy for all bodily ailments |
| 2. AGĀRADHŪMA <i>Ci.</i> 23, 41; <i>Śi.</i> 7, 24, 25; 9, 58 <i>Syn.:</i> GRHADHŪMA <i>Sū.</i> 3, 5 VĒSMADHŪMA <i>Ci.</i> 23, 14 | Soot from kitchen smoke | (a) External—in ointment (b) External—as rubbing powder (c) Ingredient of rectal suppositories (d) Internal—in linctus (e) Internal—in mixture | (a) Chronic skin diseases, poisonous bites (b) For extracting venom from poisonous bites (c) Flatulence, constipation, retention of urine (d) Throat affections (e) Poisoning |
| 3. AGRYALAVANA <i>Ci.</i> 23, 96 <i>Syn.:</i> SAINDHAVA <i>Sū.</i> 1, 88; 5, 12, etc.; <i>Vi.</i> 8, 141; <i>Śi.</i> 8, 34, etc.; <i>Ci.</i> 1/1, 25; 2/4, 11, etc. | Rock-salt | (a) External—used in many different modes of application (b) Internal—used in many types of prescriptions | (a) & (b) For a very large number of pathological conditions and as a general tonic |
| 4. ĀLA <i>Sū.</i> 1, 70; 3, 5, etc.; <i>Ci.</i> 9, 66; 18, 69, etc. <i>Syn.:</i> HARITĀLA <i>Sū.</i> 5, 26; <i>Ci.</i> 7, 114; 26, 196 | Yellow orpiment (arsenious sulphide) | (a) Ingredient of medicinal cigars (b) External—in medicated oil (c) External—ingredient of oral gargle | (a) Imbalance of the first and third humors (b) Parasitic infections of the skin, eruptions and itchings (c) Mouth and throat diseases |
| 5. AMRTĀSANGA <i>Ci.</i> 7, 114 <i>Syn.:</i> TUTTHA <i>Sū.</i> 3, 12; <i>Ci.</i> 7, 114, etc. | Blue vitriol-sulphate | (a) External—in dusting powder (b) External—in ointment | (a) Ringworm, scabies, herpes, etc. (b) Exanthema, cutaneous eruptions, eye-affections, piles, eczema, etc. |
| 6. ANJANA <i>Sū.</i> 1, 70; 3, 5 <i>Syn.:</i> SAUVRĀNĀJANA <i>Sū.</i> 5, 15 | Black sulphide of antimony | (a) External—in ointment | Leucoderma, fistula, piles, dimness of vision, eye-diseases, etc. |

TABLE 4: MINERAL SUBSTANCES

79

| 7. ANŪPALAVANA <i>Vi.</i> 8, 141 | Salt obtained by evaporations of well-water | Ingredient of rectal enema | As purgative |
|---|---|---|--|
| 8. AŚMAMAYI ŚILĀ <i>Sā.</i> 14, 26, 47, 58; <i>Śā.</i> 8, 34, 42; <i>In.</i> 12, 20; <i>Ci.</i> 1/3, 63; 5, 17, etc. | Slab of stone | Used for hot fomentation (covered with silk, cotton etc.) | Hard cutaneous swellings, abscess, varicocle, etc. |
| 9. AYAS <i>Ci.</i> 21, 131 | Iron | Used for hot compress or fomentation | Hard cutaneous swellings, varicocle |
| 10. AYASA <i>Sā.</i> 1, 131; 21, 23; <i>Śā.</i> 8, 34; <i>Ci.</i> 7, 88; 12, 21, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : KĀLAOHARAJAS <i>Sā.</i> 21, 23; <i>Ci.</i> 7, 171 KṚSNĀYASA <i>Ci.</i> 1/2, 49 KĀLĀSARAJAS <i>Ci.</i> 1/4, 58 | Finely powdered iron or specially prepared iron | (a) External—in dusting powder (b) External—ingredient of poultice (c) External—in ointment (d) External—in hair-lotion (e) Internal—used in prescription after prolonged contact with cow's urine (f) Internal—in linctus (g) Internal—in (acid) liquid mixture (h) Internal—in pills | (a) Cutaneous eruptions (b) Inflammation (c) Blindness, unseparated eyelids, tumours, piles (d) As hair-tonic and hair-dye (e) Leucoderma, jaundice, urinary disorders, anaemia, heart diseases, anal fistula, etc. (f) Toxicosis, asthma, cough, hiccup, etc. (g) Obesity, flatulence, debility, etc. (h) Disorders of chyme formation, spleen disorder, jaundice, anaemia, oedema, gastro-intestinal irritations, lithiasis, etc. |
| 11. AYOMALA <i>Ci.</i> 16, 74 <i>Syn.</i> : MAṆḌŪRA <i>Ci.</i> 16, 95, 103 | Iron rust | (a) Internal—in linctus (b) Internal—in prescription after prolonged treatment with cow's urine | (a) Toxic conditions with fever, spastic paraplegia, epilepsy, urinary disorders, skin diseases, etc. (b) Anaemia, dropsy, oedema, urinary disorders, jaundice, dysentery, intestinal parasites, etc. |
| 12. BĀLUKA <i>Vi.</i> 8, 141 | Salt from saline sand | Ingredient of rectal enema | For relief in inflammatory conditions |
| 13. BHRṢṬALOṢṬA <i>Ci.</i> 20, 30 <i>Syn.</i> : PAKVALOṢṬA <i>Ci.</i> 4, 80; 22, 42 | Lump of baked clay | Medication of drinking water by prolonged immersion | Haemothermia, biliousness |
| 14. DVE LAVANE <i>Ci.</i> 5, 80; 26, 12, 101 | Rock-salt mixed with alkaline salts | (a) Ingredient of rectal suppository (b) Internal—in powder mixture | (a) Acute constipation (b) Pain in gastric region or rectal area, piles, spleen disorders, pain after meals, throat spasms, etc. |
| 15. DVE TUTTHE <i>Ci.</i> 7, 108 | The two vitriols | External—in medicated oil | Itching eczema, dermatosis |

TABLE 4
Medicinal Substances of Mineral Origin & their Uses—(Contd.)

| Name and reference | Modern equivalent | Mode of use or application | Medicinal uses in |
|---|-------------------------------|--|--|
| 16. GAIRIKA <i>Sū.</i> 3, 5; <i>Ci.</i> 3, 73; 25, 117; 26, 210, etc. | Chalk of reddish-brown colour | (a) External—in ointment (b) External—in mud-pack (c) Ingredient of oral gargles (d) Internal—in liquid mixture (e) Internal—in infusion in water | (a) White leprosy, depigmentation of the skin, ringworm, exanthema, piles, etc. (b) Spreading skin infections (c) Halitosis, inflammation of mouth and throat, dental caries, diseases of the gum, etc. (d) Haemothermia, bronchial asthma, bleeding nose, etc. (e) Blood dysentery, menstrual disorders, diseases of the uterus |
| 17. GANDHAKA <i>Ci.</i> 7, 71 <i>Syn.</i> : LELITAKA <i>Ci.</i> 7, 70 SAUGANDHIKA <i>Sū.</i> 3, 10; <i>Ci.</i> 17, 126 | Sulphur | (a) External—in dusting powder (b) Internal—in linctus (c) Internal—suspended in acid plant juices | (a) Ringworm, itches, herpes, scabies (b) Asthma, cough, hiccup (c) Chronic skin diseases |
| 18. GARAMANI <i>Ci.</i> 23, 252 | The 'poison' gem | External—to be kept in contact with the skin | As an antidote for poisoning |
| 19. HEMAN <i>Vi.</i> 8, 9 <i>Syn.</i> : SUVARNA <i>Sū.</i> 1, 70; 5, 74 KANAKA <i>Sū.</i> 3, 16; 8, 19, etc. KĀNCANA <i>Ci.</i> 1/4, 59 | Gold | (a) Material for catheters, enema tubes, tongue scrapers, etc. (b) Medication of drinking water by prolonged immersion (c) Internal—ingredient of medicated ghee | (b) Haemothermia (c) As a vitalizing tonic and a panacea in all bodily ailments |
| 20. IṢṬAKA-CURNA <i>Ci.</i> 27, 49 | Brick-powder | External—as powder for massage | Spastic paraplegia |
| 21. KĀCA <i>Ci.</i> 27, 125 | Glass or glass like mineral | Internal—powdered and used in linctus | Hiccup, cough, asthma |
| 22. KĀLALAVANA <i>Sū.</i> 27, 303; <i>Vi.</i> 8, 141; <i>Sū.</i> 8, 34; <i>Ci.</i> 13, 134 <i>Syn.</i> : KĀLOTTHALAVANA <i>Ci.</i> 15, 171 | Black salt | (a) Internal—taken alone or dissolved in acid fruit juices (b) Internal—ingredient of medicated ghee | (a) As digestive, laxative and general tonic (b) Loss of appetite |

TABLE 4: MINERAL SUBSTANCES

81

| | | | |
|--|----------------------------------|---|---|
| 23. KĀNCANAGAIRIKA <i>Ci.</i> 20, 32 <i>Syn.</i> : KĀMŚRI <i>Ci.</i> 23, 54; 30, 121 | Yellow ochre | (a) Internal—infusion with water (b) Internal—in pills | (a) Imbalance of the second and third humors (b) Fever, toxicosis |
| 24. KĀMSYA <i>Sā.</i> 8, 9; <i>Ci.</i> 24, 154; <i>Śi.</i> 3, 7 <i>Syn.</i> : RĪTĪ-KĀMSYA <i>Sā.</i> 3, 7 | Bronze or bell-metal | Material for enema tubes, etc. | |
| 25. KĀŚISA <i>Sā.</i> 3, 5, 10; <i>Ci.</i> 7, 102 etc.; 21, 126, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : PAUŚPĀNĀJANA <i>Ci.</i> 26, 250 | Green vitriol (ferrous sulphate) | (a) External—in ointment (b) External—in eye-ointment (c) External—in dusting powder (d) External—ingredient of poultice (e) External—in medicated oil for local application | (a) Leucoderma, alopecia, fistula (b) Gradual loss of vision (c) Spreading inflammation, discoloured skin, skin diseases (d) Eye-diseases (e) Slimy discharges from the vagina, displaced or prolapsed uterus, painful and congested uterus |
| 26. KRṢṆAMRT <i>Ci.</i> 19, 82; 22, 44 <i>Syn.</i> : KRṢṆAMRTTIKĀ <i>Sā.</i> 27, 200; <i>Ci.</i> 19, 64 | Black clay | Internal—in aqueous infusion | Excessive thirst, haemorrhage |
| 27. KRṢṆASIKATĀ <i>Ci.</i> 22, 44 | Black sand | Medication of drinking water by prolonged immersion | Excessive thirst |
| 28. LAVANĀNI CATVĀRI <i>Ci.</i> 15, 111 | Mixture of four salts | (a) Internal—in pills (b) Internal—as ingredient of powder | (a) Spleen diseases, jaundice, loss of appetite, emaciation, etc. (b) Cough, asthma, heart diseases, etc. |
| 29. LAVANA-PAŅČAKA <i>Sā.</i> 1, 75; <i>Ci.</i> 13, 127; 15, 106, etc. | Mixture of five salts | (a) Ingredient of rectal enema (b) External—as massaging powder (c) Internal—in medicinal powder (d) Internal—in pills (e) Internal—in medicated ghee (f) Internal—in liquid mixture | (a) Constipation (b) For inducing bleeding in poisonous bites (c) Spleen diseases, flatulence, indigestion, short breath, etc. (d) Coryza, heart-block (e) Cough, consumption, oedema, inguinal swelling, heart diseases, etc. (f) Dysentery, anaemia, gastrointestinal irritation, etc. |
| 30. LAVANATRAYA <i>Ci.</i> 15, 177, 183; 20, 25; <i>Śi.</i> 9, 18 | Mixture of three salts | (a) Internal—in medicated ghee (b) Internal—in pills (c) Internal—in liquid mixture | (a) & (b) Colic pain, misperistalsis, piles, dysentery, etc. (c) Tetanus, convulsions, cardiac seizures |

TABLE 4
Medicinal substances of Mineral Origin & their Uses—(Contd.)

| Name and reference | Modern equivalent | Mode of use or application | Medicinal uses in |
|--|----------------------------|--|--|
| 31. LOHA <i>Ci.</i> 25, 103, etc. | Metal (iron) | Material for surgical instruments | |
| 32. LOHITAMRT <i>Ci.</i> 23, 101 | Red clay | Internal—in pills | Poisoning, oedema, indigestion, intestinal worms, etc. |
| 33. MĀKṢIKA <i>Ci.</i> 7, 70; 16, 76, etc. <i>Sym.:</i> TĀPYA <i>Ci.</i> 16, 78; 26, 250 | Iron pyrites | (a) External—in eye-ointment (b) Internal—in pills, after prolonged immersion in cows' urine (c) Internal—in linctus | (a) Gradual loss of vision (b) Chronic skin diseases (c) Anaemia, irregular fever, urinary disorders, emaciation, toxicosis, jaundice, etc. |
| 34. MANAḤŚILĀ <i>Sā.</i> 1, 70; 3, 5, 28, etc.; <i>Sī.</i> 7, 117; 17, 77, etc. | Realgar (arsenic sulphide) | (a) External—in dusting powder or in ointment (b) Ingredient of medicinal cigar (c) Internal—in linctus, pills or medicated ghee | (a) Chronic skin diseases, piles, leucoderma, baldness, alopecia, leprosy, exanthema, etc. (b) Migraine, hemicrania, carache, diseases of the gum, drowsiness, etc. (c) Oedema, dysentery, toxicosis, night-blindness, carbuncle, etc. |
| 35. MANI <i>Sā.</i> 1, 70; 6, 31; 8, 19; <i>Ni.</i> 7, 16; <i>Ci.</i> 26, 250, etc. <i>Sym.:</i> RATNA <i>Sā.</i> 8, 19, <i>In.</i> 1/2, 33 | Precious stone | External—in eye-salve, as fine powder | Eye-diseases, failing vision |
| 36. MAULAKA <i>Vi.</i> 8, 141 | Black salt | Ingredient of rectal enema | For rheumatic conditions |
| 37. MRT <i>Sā.</i> 9, 13; 18, 6; <i>Sā.</i> 1, 43; <i>Ci.</i> 4, 79; 16, 121, etc. | Clay | (a) Internal—ingredient of mixture (b) Internal—in aqueous suspension | (a) Geophagism or abnormal hanker for clay (b) Haemothermia |
| 38. O(A)UDBHIDA <i>Sā.</i> 1, 188; 27, 303; <i>Vi.</i> 8, 141; <i>Ci.</i> 15, 85; 26, 227 | Fossil salt | (a) Ingredient of rectal enema (b) Internal—in medicated ghee (c) Internal—in emulsion with oil | (a) Constipation (b) Deafness, infected ear-passage, discharge of pus from ears, etc. (c) Intestinal worms |
| 39. PAKYA <i>Ci.</i> 15, 85, 109 | Artificially prepared salt | Internal—in medicated ghee | Indigestion, dysentery, etc. |

TABLE 4: MINERAL SUBSTANCES

83

| | | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|--|--|
| 40. PANKA <i>Ci.</i> 22, 37; <i>Sā.</i> 18, 6 <i>Syn.</i> : PUṢKARINIMRT <i>Ci.</i> 4, 104 | Slime | As mud-pack for application to the skin | Sunburn, high fever, etc. |
| 41. PĀMŚU <i>Ci.</i> 23, 38, 174 | Powdered earth (clay) | External—for local application | Poisonous bites |
| 42. PĀMŚUJA <i>Sā.</i> 27, 304; <i>Vi.</i> 8, 141 | Salt prepared from saline clay | Internal—in mixtures | Loss of appetite, flatulence, rheumatism |
| 43. RAJATA <i>Vi.</i> 8, 9, 11; <i>Ci.</i> 1/1, 58; 3, 23, etc. <i>Syn.</i> : RŪPYA <i>Sā.</i> 5, 74; <i>Ci.</i> 16, 78, etc. | Silver | (a) Material for fine tubes and catheters (b) Internal—in linctus as fine powder | |
| 44. ROMAKA <i>Vi.</i> 8, 141; <i>Ci.</i> 15, 85 <i>Syn.</i> : VIDA <i>Sā.</i> 1, 88; 27, 302; <i>Sā.</i> 8, 34; <i>Ci.</i> 5, 69; 15, 85, etc. | Salt obtained from saline soils | (a) Ingredient of rectal enema (b) External—in medicated oil (c) Internal—in medicated ghee (d) Internal—in fermented mixture (e) Internal—in aqueous infusion (f) Internal—in powder mixtures (g) Internal—dissolved in acid fruit juices | (a) As a purgative in loss of appetite (b) Affections of the ear—passage and of hearing (c) & (d) Enlarged spleen, painful movement of bowels, mucus in stool, general weakness, etc. (e) Cough, asthma (f) Hard skin nodules, enlarged spleen, anaemia, dysentery, etc. (g) Chronic alcoholism |
| 45. RŪPYAŚILĀJATU <i>Ci.</i> 1/3, 58 | Mineral bitumen from ores of silver | Internal—as powder | Imbalance of the first and third humors |
| 46. SĀMUDRA <i>Sā.</i> 1, 89; <i>Vi.</i> 8, 141 <i>Syn.</i> : SĀMUDRAKA <i>Sā.</i> 27, 304 | Sea-salt | (a) Ingredient of rectal enema (b) Internal—in powder mixtures | (a) Imbalance of the humors (as tranquilizer) (b) Indigestion, loss of appetite |
| 47. SARVALOHA <i>Ci.</i> 1/3, 46 | Tin, lead, iron, copper and silver | Internal—as finely-divided powders, boiled with myrobolan juice | As general tonic |
| 48. ŚĪSAKA <i>Sā.</i> 3, 16; <i>Ci.</i> 7, 88; 17, 126 | Lead | (a) Internal—in pills, after prolonged immersion of the powdered metal in cow's urine (b) Internal—in linctus as powder | (a) Cutaneous eruptions (b) Asthma, cough, hiccup |
| 49. SAURĀṢṬRĪ <i>Ci.</i> 7, 114; 15, 138; 30, 79, 98 | Alum | (a) External—in medicated oil (b) Internal—in linctus | (a) Intestinal worms, pruritus, leucorrhoea, erosion of the cervix, prolapsed uterus, etc. (b) Gastric disorders, enlarged spleen, colic pain, jaundice, anorexia, etc. |

TABLE 4
Medicinal substances of Mineral Origin & their Uses—(Contd.)

| Name and reference | Modern equivalent | Mode of use or application | Medicinal uses in |
|--|---|--|---|
| 50. SAUVARCALA Śr. 1, 88; 28, 20, etc.; Vi. 8, 14; Śa. 8, 34; Ci. 5, 69; 8, 142, etc.; Ka. 7, 53; Śi. 7, 17; 9, 19, etc. | Salt obtained by boiling alkali with myrobolans | (a) External—in various modes of application (b) Internal—in a large number of prescriptions | (a) & (b) Used in a large number of pathological conditions |
| 51. SPHAṬIKA Ci. 1/4, 22; 17, 125 | Quartz | (a) Internal—in linctus as fine powder (b) Internal—in medicated ghee | (a) Asthma, cough, hiccup (b) As a general tonic |
| 52. SUVARNANĀKṢIKA Ci. 7, 71 | Pyrites ore | Internal—the powder after digestion with acid juices | A general remedy in all diseases |
| 53. TĀMRA Ci. 21, 231 | Copper | Material for hot fomentation | Varicocoele, hard cutaneous swellings |
| 54. TĀMRARAJAS Ci. 1/1, 58; 1/4, 22; 17, 126; 24, 246, etc. | Finely divided copper | (a) External—in eye-ointment (b) Internal—in linctus (c) Internal—in mixture after digestion with plant juices | (a) Eye-diseases (b) Accumulation of waste matter in stomach, hiccup (c) General weakness and debility |
| 55. TĀMRAŚILĀJATU Ci. 1/3, 58 | Mineral bitumen from ores of copper | Internal—as powder | As a vitalizing tonic |
| 56. TĪKṢNĀYASA Ci. 1/3, 16 | Tempered iron or steel | Internal—in pills, after digestion of thin foils of the metal in acid juices | As a vitalizing tonic |
| 57. TILAKṢĀRA Śr. 3, 14 | Alkaline ash from sesame seeds | External—in ointment | Ringworm, pruritus, papules on the skin-surface |
| 58. TRĀPU Śr. 5, 74; Ci. 7, 88; Śi. 3, 7 | Tin | (a) Material for enema tube, etc. (b) External—as ingredient of dusting powder | (b) Cutaneous eruptions |
| 59. UDBHIDA-SAINDHAVA Śr. 1, 88; 27, 303; Vi. 8, 141; Ci. 15, 85; 26, 227 | Salt obtained from ashes of marine plants | (a) In rectal enema (b) Internal—in medicated ghee (c) Internal—in oil-emulsion | (a) Constipation, colic pain, enlarged spleen, abdominal diseases, etc. (b) Diseases of the eye, mouth and ear |

| | | | |
|--|---|--|---|
| 60. VAIDURYA Ci. 1/4, 22; 4, 79, etc. | Beryl (cat's eye) | (a) External—in eye-ointment as powder (b) Internal—in linctus (c) Internal—in aqueous infusion | (a) Eye-diseases (b) Asthma, cough, hiccup (c) Haemothermia |
| 61. VAJRA Ci. 7, 22; 23, 252 | Diamond | Internal—finely powdered and mixed with plant juices | As a general remedy for all ailments |
| 62. VALMĪKA-MRTTIKĀ Ci. 27, 49, 51, 54 | The deposit of white-ant hills | External—as massaging powder | Spastic paraplegia |
| 63. VIṢAMŪSIKĀ Ci. 23, 253 | The "anti-poison" gem | External—to be worn in contact with the skin | Antidote for poisoning |
| 64. VARĀṬAKA Ci. 26, 224 | Lime obtained by burning cowrie shells | Internal—as powder suspended in medicated oil | Ear-ache |

TABLE 5
Cereals and Legumes

| ŚUKADHĀNYA-VARGA (Cereals) | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| (1) Varieties of rice:— | <i>Raktaśāli, Mahāśāli, Kalama, Śakunihṛta, Tūrṇaka, Dīrghaśūka, Gaura, Pāṇḍuka, Lāṅgula, Śāribhakhya, Promodaka, Pataṅga, Tāpanīya, Yavaka, Havana, Pāṃśu-vāpya, Naiṣadhaka, Svastika, Gaurasvastika, Varaka, Uddālaka, Cina, Śārada, Ujjvala, Dardura, Gandhana, Kuruvinda, Vrihi and Pājala</i> (Sū. 27, 6-13) |
| (2) Varieties of millet:— | <i>Śyāmaka, Hasti-śyāmaka, Ambhas-śyāmaka, Nivāra, Toyaparni, Gavedhuka, Prasāntika, Lauhitya, Aṇu, Priyaṅgu, Mukunda, Jhīṅṭigarmuṭi, Varuka, Varaka, Śivira, Ukaṭa, and Jūrṇāhyā</i> (Sū. 27, 16-18). |
| (3) Other varieties of corns:— | <i>Yava</i> (barley), <i>Veṇuyava</i> (bamboo-seeds), <i>Godhūma</i> (wheat), <i>Nandimukhi</i> and <i>Madhulī</i> (Sū. 27, 19-22) |
| ŚAMĪDHĀNYA-VARGA (Legumes) | |
| | <i>Mudga</i> (green gram), <i>Māṣa</i> (black gram), <i>Rājamāṣa</i> (black-eye pea), <i>Kulaththa</i> (horse-gram), <i>Madhusṭaka</i> (moth-gram), <i>Canaka</i> (chick-pea), <i>Masura</i> (lentil), <i>Saharenava</i> (common pea), <i>Tila</i> (sesame), <i>Simbi</i> , <i>Āḍaka</i> (pigeon-pea), <i>Saidagaja</i> , <i>Avalmuja</i> , <i>Kakanda</i> (sword-bean), <i>Umā</i> (linseed), <i>Āmaguptā</i> (cowage) (Sū. 27, 23-34) |

TABLE 6
Natural Waters
JALA-VARGA Sū. 27, 197-216.

| Name and reference | English translation |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------|
| ANŪPA-JALA | Water of fresh-water lakes |
| BĀPI-JALA | Water of artificial tanks |
| HAIMA-JALA | Water from melting ice or snow |
| KŪPA-JALA | Well-water |
| NADYA-JALA | River water |
| PRASRAVAṆA-JALA | Water of surface springs and geysers |
| ŚĀILA-JALA | Water of hill or mountain springs |
| SAROJALA | Water of ponds |
| ŚĪŚIRA | Dew |
| TAḌĀGA-JALA | Water of artificial lakes |
| TOYADA-JALA | Rain water |
| TUṢĀRA | Snow |
| VARUṆĀLAYA-JALA | Sea water |

TABLE 7
Sugar-cane Derivatives & Types of Honey

| Name and reference | English translation |
|--|---|
| RASA-VARGA , <i>Sū.</i> 27, 238-242 | Sweet juices and their derivatives |
| AVAŚOŚITA-RASA | Sugar-cane juice boiled down to half, one-third, or one-fourth of its original bulk |
| DHAUTA-GUḌA | Clarified <i>guḍa</i> |
| GUḌA | Dark-brown semi-crystallized crude sugar |
| IKṢU-RASA | Sugar-cane juice |
| KHAṆḌA-ŚARKARĀ | Candied sugar |
| KṢUDRA-GUḌA | Dark-coloured treacle (or molasses) |
| MADHU-ŚARKARĀ | Crystallized honey |
| MATSYA-PIṆḌAKA | Crude granulated sugar |
| PAUṆḌRAKA | Sugar-cane juice (clarified) |
| ŚARKARĀ | Crystallized cane sugar |
| VAMŚAKA | Unclarified sweet juice of the "Camel thorn" (<i>Alhazī mauro-rum</i>) |
| YĀNTRIKA-RASA | Mechanically pressed cane-juice |
| MADHU-VARGA <i>Sū.</i> 27, 243 | Honeys |
| BHRĀMARA | Honey of the <i>Apis dorsata</i> |
| KṢAUDRA | Dark-coloured honey from unspecified source |
| MĀKṢIKA | Bee honey |
| PAUTTIKA | Insect or wasp honey |

TABLE 8
Milk and Milk-products
PAYOVARGA Sū. 27, 217-236

| Name and reference | English translation |
|--------------------|--|
| ĀVIKA-GHṚTA | Clarified butter prepared from sheep's milk |
| ĀVIKA-PAYAS | Sheep's milk |
| CHĀGA-GHṚTA | Clarified butter prepared from goat's milk |
| CHĀGA-PAYAS | Goat's milk |
| DADHI | Sour milk (curds or koumiss) |
| EKAŚAPHA-PAYAS | Milk from animals with uncloven hooves |
| GAVYA-GHṚTA | Clarified butter from cow's milk |
| GAVYA-PAYAS | Cow's milk |
| GHṚTA | Clarified butter from any source; or any preparation containing a major proportion of clarified butter |
| HASTINĪ-PAYAS | Elephant's milk |
| KILĀTA | Concentrated milk |
| MAHIṢĪ-GHṚTA | Clarified butter from buffalo-milk |
| MAHIṢĪ-PAYAS | Buffalo's milk |
| MAṆḌA | Casein |
| MAṆḌAKA | Immature curds (partly soured milk) |
| MĀNUṢA-PAYAS | Human milk |
| MORAṬA | Thickened milk |
| NAVANĪTA | Butter |
| SARA | Coagulum of milk |
| TAKRA | Dilute buttermilk |
| TAKRAPINḌAKA | Coagulated (solid portion of) buttermilk |
| UṢṬRĪ-PAYAS | Camel's milk |

TABLE 9
Vegetable Oils
TAILA-VARGA Sū. 27, 291-293

| Name and reference | English translation |
|------------------------|---|
| ATASYA-TAILA | Linseed oil |
| ERAṆḌA-TAILA | Castor oil |
| KUSUMBHA-TAILA | Safflower oil |
| PRIYĀLA-TAILA | Oil of the <i>Buchannania Latifolia</i> |
| SARŚAPA-TAILA | Mustard oil |
| TILA-TAILA, Sū. 13, 12 | Sesame (<i>Sisamum indicum</i>) oil |

TABLE 10
Alcoholic Beverages
MADYA-VARGA Sū. 27, 179-193

| Name and reference | English translation |
|--|---|
| ABHINAVA-MADYA | Freshly fermented liquor |
| ĀKṢIKI | Fermented liquor from the chebulic myrobolan |
| AMLAKAÑJIKA, <i>Ci. 5, 77</i> | Sour fermented liquor from rice gruel |
| <i>Syn.:</i> <i>Kāñjika</i> <i>Dhānyāmla, Sā. 15, 7</i> <i>Tuṣodaka</i> | |
| ĀRAṆĀLA, <i>Ci. 15, 116</i> | Sour gruel from fermented boiled rice |
| ARIṢṬA | Distilled wine for medicinal use |
| ĀSAVA | General name for distilled wine |
| ĀSUTA, <i>Ci. 15, 121</i> | Brewed mixture containing <i>Soma</i> plant juice |
| GAUḌA | Rum prepared from crystallized brown sugar |
| JAGALA | Fermented liquor prepared from unboiled rice |
| MADHULIKA | Clear fermented liquor from <i>Mohua</i> fruits |
| MADHUSUKTA, <i>Ci. 26, 227</i> | Fermented liquor from a mixture of sugar-cane juice, dark-brown crude sugar and boiled rice; sweetened with honey |
| MADHVĀSAVA | Rum prepared from honey |
| MĀDHVĪKA | Fermented liquor sweetened with honey |
| MADYA | Fermented liquor from barley, etc. |
| <i>Syn.:</i> <i>Surā</i> | |
| MADIRĀ | Distilled wine containing least amount of water (of high alcohol content) |
| <i>Syn.:</i> <i>Surāmaṇḍa</i> <i>Vāruṇimaṇḍa, Ci. 5, 92</i> | |
| MAIREYA | Mixed wine containing equal quantities of rum and fermented (undistilled) wine |
| MRDAUKA | Fermented liquor from grape juice |
| PAKVARASA | Fermented liquor from mixture of thickened cane juice and dark-brown crude sugar |
| <i>Syn.:</i> <i>Sidhu, Vi. 8, 140</i> <i>Prasannā, Ci. 26, 18</i> | Clear decanted layer of fermented liquors |
| RASĀSAVA | Fermented liquor of sugar-cane juice |
| ŚĀRKARĀ | Fermented liquor from cane sugar solution |
| SAUVĪRAKA | A type of fermented liquor |
| ŚĪTARASIKA | Fermented liquor from cold (unboiled) sugar-cane juice |
| SUKTA, <i>Ci. 29, 9</i> | Fermented liquor from mixture of cold sugar-cane juice and boiled rice |
| SURĀSAVA | Wine distilled from fermented liquor |
| TUṢĀMBU | Sour fermented liquor from barley gruel |

TABLE 11-A
Anatomical Terms—General

| Name and reference | Modern name |
|---|----------------------|
| 1. ADHARAGUDA, Śā. 7, 10 | Anus |
| 2. AKṢI, Śā. 7, 11 | Eye |
| 3. AKṢIKANĪKĀ, Śā. 7, 11 | Pupils |
| 4. AKṢIKŪṬA, Śā. 7, 11 | Eye-balls |
| 5. AKṢIVARTMA, Śā. 7, 11 | Eye-lids |
| 6. ĀMĀŚAYA, Śā. 7, 10 | Stomach |
| 7. AṂSA, Vi. 8, 117 | Shoulder-blade |
| 8. ĀNANA, Vi. 8, 117 | Face |
| 9. AṂGULA, Śā. 26, 67 | Finger |
| 10. ANUŚASIRĀ, Śā. 7, 13 (29,956 in number) | Capillaries |
| 11. ARATNI, Vi. 8, 107 | Bones of the forearm |
| 12. ASṚKDHARA, Śā. 7, 4 | Capillary |
| 13. ĀSYA, Vi. 8, 117 | Mouth |
| 14. AVATTA, Śā. 7, 11 | Base of the skull |
| 15. BASTIŚIRṢA, Vi. 8, 117 | Lower abdomen |
| 16. BHAGA, Vi. 8, 117 | Vagina |
| 17. CIBUKA, Vi. 8, 107 | Chin |
| 18. DANTA, Śā. 7, 11 | Tooth |
| 19. DANTAVEṢṬAKA, Śā. 7, 11 | Gums |
| 20. DHAMANĪ, Vi. 5, 9 (200 in number) | Artery |
| 21. GALAŚUNḌI, Śā. 7, 11 | Tonsils |
| 22. GAṆḌA, Vi. 8, 105 | Cheek |
| 23. GARBHĀŚAYA, Śā. 3, 3 | Uterus |
| 24. GOJIHVIKĀ, Śā. 7, 11 | Tongue |
| 25. GRĪVĀ, Śā. 20, 8 | Front of the neck |
| 26. GUDA, Śā. 27, 275 | Rectal passage |
| 27. GULPHA, V. 8, 107 | Ankle |
| 28. HANU, Vi. 8, 105 | Jaw |
| 29. HASTA, Vi. 8, 117 | Hand |
| 30. HRDAYA, Śā. 17, 3 | Heart |

TABLE 11-A
Anatomical Terms—General (contd.)

| Name and reference | Modern name |
|--|--------------------------|
| 31. JĀNGHĀ, <i>Sū.</i> 16, 8 | Calf |
| 32. JANTRU, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 107 | Collar-bone |
| 33. JĀNU, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 107 | Knee |
| 34. JARĀYU, <i>Śā.</i> 3, 6 | Womb |
| 35. KAKṢA, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 105 | Arm-pit |
| 36. KĀṆDARA, <i>Sū.</i> 11, 48 | Sinew |
| 37. KARṆAPATRAKA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 11 | Outer ear |
| 38. KARṆAŚAṢKULIKA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 11 | Inner ear |
| 39. KAṬI, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 117 | Waist |
| 40. KEŚA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Hair |
| 41. KEŚABHŪMI, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Scalp |
| 42. KLOMAN, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 93 | Broncho-pneumonial tract |
| 43. KOṢṬHĀNGA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 10 | Alimentary canal |
| 44. KRĀṬIKĀ, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 105 | Nape of neck |
| 45. KṢUDRĀNTRA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 10 | Small intestines |
| 46. KUKṢI, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 93 | Abdomen |
| 47. KUKUNDARA, <i>Śā.</i> 7, 11 | Flanks |
| 48. LALĀṬA, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 105 | Forehead |
| 49. LOMAN, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 106 | Body-hair |
| 50. LOMAKŪPA, <i>Śā.</i> 6, 23 | Skin-pore |
| 51. MĀMSA, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 82 | Muscles (flesh) |
| 52. MARMA, <i>Sū.</i> 11, 49 (107 in number) | Viscera; vital parts |
| 53. MASTIṢKA, <i>Śi.</i> 9, 80 | Cranial matter (brain) |
| 54. MEDAS, <i>Sū.</i> 16, 9 | Adipose tissue |
| 55. MEDHRA, <i>Sū.</i> 27, 275 | Urethra |
| 56. MŪRDHAN, <i>Sū.</i> 11, 48 | Cranium (skull) |
| 57. MŪTRĀŚAYA, <i>Vi.</i> 8, 117 | Urinary bladder |
| 58. NĀBHI, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 93 | Navel |
| 59. NĀSĀ, <i>Śā.</i> 8, 19 | Nose |
| 60. NĀSĀPUTA, <i>Śā.</i> 8, 19 | Nostrils |

TABLE 11-A
Anatomical Terms—General (contd.)

| Name and reference | Modern equivalent |
|--|--------------------------------|
| 61. NITAMBA, Śā. 7, 11. | Buttocks |
| 62. OṢṬHA, Śā. 7, 11 | Lips |
| 63. PĀDA, Sū. 26, 67 | Feet |
| 64. PĀDAHRDAYA, Śā. 7, 11 | Soles of the feet |
| 65. PĀDĀNGULA, Sū. 26, 67 | Toes |
| 66. PAKVĀŚAYA, Sū. 2, 10 | Colon |
| 67. PĀṆIHRDAYA, Śā. 7, 11 | Palms of the hands |
| 68. PĀRŚNYA, Vi. 8, 107 | Heel |
| 69. PARVAN, Sū. 26, 8 | Joints |
| 70. PIṆDIKA, Śā. 7, 11 (Peṣī—Śā. 7, 14) :—400 in number | Muscles |
| 71. PLĪHĀ, Sū. 17, 93 | Spleen |
| 72. PRAPĀṆI, Vi. 8, 117 | Forearm |
| 73. PRAVĀHA, Vi. 8, 117 | Upper arm |
| 74. PRṢṬHA, Vi. 8, 117 | Back |
| 75. PURIṢĀDHĀRA, Śā. 7, 10 | Pelvic colon |
| 76. RASĀYANYA, Vi. 5, 8 | Capillaries |
| 77. SAKTHI, Sū. 20, 8 | Thigh-bone |
| 78. SAMVṚTĀSAMVṚTA, Vi. 5, 8 | Body channel closed at one end |
| 79. SANDHI, Śā. 7, 14 (200 in number) | Joint |
| 80. ṢĀṆKHYA, Vi. 8, 105 | Temples |
| 81. ṢARĪRACCHIDRA, Vi. 5, 8 | Body orifice |
| 82. ŚEFA, Vi. 8, 117 | Penis |
| 83. ŚIRAS, Sū. 17, 3 | Head |
| 84. SIRĀ, Vi. 5, 9 (700 in number) | Vein |
| 85. ŚLEṢMABHAVA Śā. 7, 11 | Lungs |
| 86. SKANDHA, Sū. 27, 334 | Shoulder |
| 87. SNĀYU, Sū. 11, 48 (900 in number) | Tendon; nerve |
| 88. SPHIK, Sū. 21, 15 | Hip |
| 89. ŚRONI, Sū. 27, 275 | Pelvis |
| 90. STANA, Vi. 8, 117 | Breast |

TABLE 11-A
Anatomical Terms—General (contd.)

| Name and reference | Modern name |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 91. STANAMAṆḌALA, Śā. 4, 16 | Areoles |
| 92. STHŪLĀNTRA, Śā. 7, 10 | Large intestines |
| 93. ŚUKRĀŚAYA, Śā. 2, 19 | Seminal vessel |
| 94. SVĀNI, Śā. 7, 42 | Bodily orifice |
| 95. SVEDAMUKHA, Śā. 7, 42 | Openings of sweat-glands |
| 96. TĀLU Śā. 7, 11 | Palate |
| 97. TAMAKA, Ci. 17, 62 | Bronchial tract |
| 98. TRKA, Vi. 8, 117 | Sacrum |
| 99. UDAGDHARA, Śā. 7, 4 | Epidermis |
| 100. UKHA, Śā. 7, 11 | Axilla |
| 101. UPAJHVIKĀ, Śā. 7, 11 | Uvula |
| 102. ŪRU, Śā. 16, 8 | Thigh |
| 103. UTSEDHA, Vi. 8, 117 | Neck |
| 104. UTTARAGUDA, Śā. 7, 10 | Upper part of the rectal passage |
| 105. VANKṢAṆA, Śā. 14, 10 | Groin |
| 106. VAPAVAHANA, Śā. 7, 10 | Omentum |
| 107. VRKA, Śā. 17, 93 | Kidney |
| 108. VRṢAṆA, Śā. 14, 10 | Testicles |
| 109. YAKṚT Śā. 17, 93 | Liver |

TABLE 11-B

Bones in the Human Body

In the *Caraka Saṃhitā* the total number of *asthi* (a general term used by Caraka for bones, teeth, nails, hard cartilages and bone-sockets) in the human body is said to be 360, which include (*Śā. 7, 6*):

| Name | Number | Modern equivalent |
|------------------------------|--------|---|
| 1. AKṢAKA | 2 | Collar-bones |
| 2. AMSA | 2 | Cannot be identified with any modern description |
| 3. AMSA-PHALAKA | 2 | Scapula or shoulder-blades |
| 4. ARATNI | 4 | Radius and ulna of the forearm |
| 5. BĀHUNALAKA | 2 | Bones of the upper arms |
| 6. BHAGĀSTHI | 1 | Pubic bone or the sacrum-cum-coccyx |
| 7. DANTA | 32 | Teeth |
| 8. DANTOLŪKHALA | 32 | Sockets of the teeth |
| 9. GRĪVĀSTHI | 15 | Bones in the column of neck |
| 10. GULPHA | 4 | Ankle bones or malleoli |
| 11. HANVASTHI | 1 | Lower jaw-bone |
| 12. HANUMŪLABANDHANA | 2 | Attachment or binding-bones of the lower jaw |
| 13. HASTA-MĀNIKA | 2 | Bones of the wrists |
| 14. JĀNGHĀ | 4 | Tibia and fibula of the legs |
| 15. JĀNU | 2 | Knee-caps |
| 16. JATRU | 1 | Cartilage of the wind-pipe |
| 17. KAPĀLAKA | 2 | Elbow-pans |
| 18. NAKHA | 20 | Nails |
| 19. NĀSIKĀ-GAṆḌA-KŪTA-LALĀṬA | 1 | Two nasal, two molar and two superciliary ridges of the eye-brows |
| 20. PĀṆIPĀDĀṆGULYASTHI | 60 | Digital bones or phalanges of the toes and fingers (56 only) |
| 21. PĀṆIPĀDAŚALĀKĀ | 20 | Metacarpal and metatarsal bones |
| 22. PĀṆIPĀDAŚALĀKĀDHIṢ-ṬHĀNA | 4 | Bases of the metacarpal and metatarsal bones |
| 23. PĀRṢṆYASTHI | 2 | Heel-bones |
| 24. PARŚUKĀ | 24 | Ribs |
| 25. PRṢṬHAGATĀSTHI | 45 | Backbone or the vertebral column |
| 26. ŚANKHYA | 2 | Temple-bones |
| 27. ŚIRAHKAPĀLA | 4 | Cranial bones |

TABLE 11-B
Bones in the Human Body (contd.)

| Name | Number | Modern equivalent |
|---|--------|--|
| 28. ŚRONIPHALAKA | 2 | Pelvic bones (<i>os innominatum</i>) |
| 29. STHĀLAKA | 24 | Sockets of the ribs |
| 30. STHĀLAKĀRBUDA | 24 | Tubercles of the ribs |
| 31. TĀLUKA | 2 | Hard palate |
| 32. URASASTHI | 14 | Breast-bones |
| 33. ŪRUNALAKA | 2 | Thigh-bones |
| The total number of bones in the human body, as given in modern anatomy, is 206 only. | | |

TABLE 12
Physiological Terms

| Name and reference | Modern name |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. ĀMAGARBHA, <i>Sū.</i> 6, 10 | Embryo (egg) |
| 2. AṆTRAPĀKA, <i>Ci.</i> 15, 38 | Digestive process |
| 3. AṆURASA, <i>Sū.</i> 26, 28 | Latent taste |
| 4. APARĀ, <i>Śā.</i> 6, 23 | Placenta |
| 5. APICCHADA, <i>Sū.</i> 28, 4 | Serum |
| 6. ĀRTAVA, <i>Śā.</i> 3, 3 | Ovum |
| 7. ĀŚRU, <i>Ci.</i> 26, 23 | Lachrymal fluid |
| 8. BĪJAGRAHAṆA, <i>Śā.</i> 2, 23 | Fertilization of the ovum |
| 9. DHĀTU, <i>Sū.</i> 7, 49 | Major constituents of the human body |
| 10. DRṢṬI, <i>Sū.</i> 8, 8 | Vision |
| 11. GARBHA, <i>Sū.</i> 7, 39 | Conception |
| 12. GHRĀṆA, <i>Sū.</i> 8, 8 | Sense of smell |
| 13. HRDAYASPANDANA, <i>Ci.</i> 16, 12 | Heart-beat |
| 14. KAPHA, <i>Sū.</i> 16, 9 | Phlegm or secretion of mucus |
| 15. KIṬṬA, <i>Sū.</i> 28, 3 | Secretion or bodily waste products |
| 16. LASI, <i>Sū.</i> 28, 8 | Lymphatic fluid |
| 17. MAJJĀ, <i>Sū.</i> 13, 17 | Bone-marrow |
| 18. MALA, <i>Sū.</i> 7, 42 | Excretions of the body |
| 19. MASTIṢKA or MASTULĀṄGA, <i>Sū.</i> 9, 81, 90 | Brain-matter |
| 20. MŪTRA, <i>Sū.</i> 14, 4 | Urine |
| 21. NĀBHINĀḌĪ, <i>Sū.</i> 6, 23 | Umbilical cord |
| 22. OJAS, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 75 | Vital essence |
| 23. PARIṆĀMĀPADYA, <i>Vi.</i> 5, 6 | Metabolic process |
| 24. PITTA, <i>Sū.</i> 3, 6 | Bile |
| 25. PRĀṆA, <i>Vi.</i> 5, 6 | Life-breath |
| 26. PURIṢA, <i>Sū.</i> 14, 4 | Faeces |
| 27. RAJAS, <i>Sū.</i> 25, 40 | Menstrual flow |
| 28. RASA, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 64 | Nutrient body-fluid |
| 29. RAKTA, <i>Sū.</i> 11, 48 | Blood |
| 30. RASANĀ, <i>Sū.</i> 8, 8 | Sense of taste |

TABLE 12
Physiological Terms (contd.)

| Name and reference | Modern name |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 31. RUDHIRASROTAS, <i>Vi.</i> 5, 6 | Blood-flow |
| 32. SAṂKOCA, <i>Sū.</i> 7, 18 | Muscular contraction |
| 33. SPARŚA, <i>Sū.</i> 8, 8 | Sense of touch |
| 34. SROTAS, <i>Vi.</i> 5, 8 | Movement of fluids through channels in the human body |
| 35. ŚROTRA, <i>Sū.</i> 8, 8 | Sense of hearing |
| 37. ŚUKRA, <i>Vi.</i> 5, 6 | Semen |
| 37. SVEDA, <i>Vi.</i> 5, 6 | Sweat |
| 38. SVEDĀGAMA, <i>Sū.</i> 7, 15 | Perspiration |
| 39. UDGĀRA, <i>Sū.</i> 7, 33 | Eructation |
| 40. UDRĀṆA, <i>Śā.</i> 4, 16 | Erection |
| 41. UPADEHA, <i>Gi.</i> 26, 23 | Mucus cells |
| 42. VĪRYA, <i>Sū.</i> 26, 66 | Potency |

TABLE 13
Diseases

| Name and reference | Modern name |
|---|--|
| 1. ADHIJHIVĀ, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 77 | Abscess under the tongue |
| 2. AGNIMĀNDYA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 17 | Dyspepsia |
| 3. AJĀTODAKA, <i>Ci.</i> 13, 58 | Dehydration of the stomach |
| 4. AKṢIBHEDA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 1 | Squint eye |
| 5. AKṢIPĀKA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14 | Ophthalmitis |
| 6. AKSIROGA, <i>Ci.</i> 26, 130 (Ninety-six varieties mentioned, but neither named nor described) | Eye-affection |
| 7. ĀLAJĪ, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 88 | Whitlow |
| 8. ĀMADOṢA, <i>Vi.</i> 2, 10 | Disorders of chyme formation |
| 9. AMLAPITTA, <i>Ci.</i> 15, 47 | Acid dyspepsia |
| 10. ĀNĀHA, <i>Ci.</i> 28, 29 | Acute constipation |
| 11. ANIDRĀ, <i>Ci.</i> 28, 21 | Insomnia |
| 12. ANTARĀYĀMA, <i>Ci.</i> 28, 43 | Stiff neck |
| 13. ANTRĀPĀNAVIDĀHA, <i>Sū.</i> 24, 14 | Intestinal inflammation |
| 14. ANTRAVRDDHI, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 94 | Hernia |
| 15. APASMĀRA, <i>Ci.</i> 10, 3 (Five types described according to etiology) | Epilepsy |
| 16. APATASTRĀKA, <i>Si.</i> 9, 12 | Convulsions with body bent like a bow (Tetanus) |
| 17. ARDHĀVABHEDA, <i>Si.</i> 9, 74 | Hemicrania |
| 18. ARBUDA, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 87 | Non-suppurating swelling |
| 19. ARDITA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Facial paralysis |
| 20. AROCAKA, <i>Ci.</i> 26, 124 (Six types described according to etiology) | Anorexia |
| 21. ARŚA, <i>Ci.</i> 14, 7 (Seven types described according to etiology) | Haemorrhoids |
| 22. AŚMARI, <i>Ci.</i> 26, 36 (Two types according to etiology) | Urinary calculus |
| 23. ASTHIKṢAYA, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 67 | Atrophy of bones |
| 24. ĀSYAVIPĀKA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14 | Stomatitis |
| 25. ATAKTYĀBHINIVEŚA, <i>Ci.</i> 10, 52 | Psychic epilepsy |
| 26. ATISĀRA, <i>Ci.</i> 19, 4 | Dysentery |
| (a) ĀMĀTISĀRA, <i>Ci.</i> 19, 5 | Dysentery with mucus discharge |

TABLE 13
Diseases (contd.)

| Name and reference | Modern name |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| (b) RAKTĀTISĀRA, <i>Ci.</i> 19, 70 (Six other types described according to etiology) | Dysentery with blood discharge |
| 27. ATISTHŪLA, <i>Sū.</i> 21, 4 | Excessive obesity |
| 28. BHAGANDARA, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 96 | Anal fistula |
| 29. CYŪTASANDHI, <i>Ci.</i> 25, 68 | Dislocation |
| 30. DANTABHEDA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Dental schism |
| 31. DANTAMĀMSA VIDRADHI, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 78 | Gum-boil |
| 32. DANTAŚAITHILYA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Loose teeth |
| 33. DHAMANĪPRATICAYA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 177 | Dilatation of blood vessels |
| 34. DHANUṢṬAMBHA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14 | Tetanus |
| 35. DURMA, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 73 | Neurasthenia |
| 36. EKĀNGAROGA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Monoplegia |
| 37. GALAGAṆḌA, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 79 | Tumour on the side of the neck |
| 38. GALAGRAHA, <i>Sū.</i> 18, 22 | Acute swelling inside throat |
| 39. GALAPĀKA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14 | Suppurated inflammation in the throat |
| 40. GALAŚUṆḌIKĀ, <i>Sū.</i> 18, 20 | Tonsilitis |
| 41. GARBHIṆĪROGA, <i>Sū.</i> 8, 26 | Diseases of pregnancy |
| 42. GRAHAṆĪDOṢA, <i>Ci.</i> 15, 51 (Four types described according to etiology). | Diarrhoea |
| 43. GRANTHI, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 81 | Glandular swelling; varicocele |
| 44. GRDHRASI, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Sciatica |
| 45. GUDABHRAṂŚA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Prolapsed anus |
| 46. GUDAPĀKA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14 | Proctitis of the anus |
| 47. GULMA, <i>Ci.</i> 5, 48 (Six types described according to etiology) | Hardening and swelling of the spleen |
| 48. HRDDRAVA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Tachycardia |
| 49. HRDROGA, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 6 (Five types mentioned, but not described) | Heart disease |
| 50. HRNMOHA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Cardiac irregularity or heart-block |
| 51. IKṢUVĀLIKARASAMEHA, <i>Ni.</i> 4, 10 | Glycosuria |
| 52. JĀLAKAGARDABHA, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 99 | Fever, due to suppuration |
| 53. JĀNUBHEDA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Bow legs |

TABLE 13
Diseases (contd.)

| Name and reference | Modern name |
|--|--|
| 54. JĀNUVIŚLEṢA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Knock-knees |
| 55. JĀṬHARĀGNIVIKĀRA, <i>Vi.</i> 6, 12 (Four types named and described according to symptoms) | Morbid appetite |
| 56. JVARA, <i>Ci.</i> chapter 3 (Eight types described according to etiology, which includes <i>sannipāta</i> (typhoid). <i>Sū.</i> 17, 41) | Fever |
| 57. KAKṢĀ, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14 | Herpes |
| 58. KAṆḌU, <i>Ci.</i> 29, 17 | Pruritus |
| 59. KARṆAROGA, <i>Ci.</i> 26, 127 | Diseases of the ear |
| (a) BĀDHIRYA, <i>Ci.</i> 26, 128 | Deafness |
| (b) KARṆAŚOPHA, <i>Ci.</i> 29, 127 | Inflammatory swelling inside ear |
| (c) KARṆASRĀVA, <i>Ci.</i> 26, 127 | Pus discharge from the ear |
| (d) PŪTISRĀVAṆA, <i>Ci.</i> 26, 127 (Also eight other types according to symptoms) | Suppuration of the inner the ear |
| 60. KĀSA, <i>Ci.</i> chapter 18 (Five varieties described according to etiology) | Chronic cough |
| 61. KEŚĀBHŪMISPHUṬANAM, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Fissures of the scalp |
| 62. KHĀLITVA, <i>Sū.</i> 5, 30 | Baldness |
| 63. KHAṆJATVA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Lameness |
| 64. KLAIBYA, <i>Ci.</i> 30, 154 (Four types described according to etiology) | Impotency of the male |
| 65. KOTĀ, <i>Sū.</i> 24, 16 | Localized thickening of muscle-fibres |
| 66. KṚMI, <i>Sū.</i> 19, 9 (Nineteen types according to nature of the parasites) | Parasitic infections |
| 67. KṢĪRA-DOṢA, <i>Ci.</i> 30, 237 (Eleven types according to etiology and symptoms) | Disorder of lactation |
| 68. KURJATVA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Hunch-back condition |
| 69. KUṢṬHA, <i>Ci.</i> chapter 7 | Chronic skin diseases |
| (a) ALASAKA, <i>Ci.</i> 7, 23 | Itching red papules |
| (b) CARMADALA, <i>Ci.</i> 7, 24 | Easily-bursting, itching eruptions |
| (c) CARMAKUṢṬHA, <i>Ci.</i> 7, 21 | Extensive eczema with thickened dermis |
| (d) EKAKUṢṬHA, <i>Ci.</i> 7, 21 | Localized eczema |
| (e) DADRU, <i>Ci.</i> 7, 23 | Ringworm |

TABLE 13
Diseases (*contd.*)

| Name and reference | Modern name |
|--|--|
| (f) KĀKANA, Ci. 7, 20 | Malignant growths |
| (g) KAPĀLA, Ci. 7, 14 | Erythema |
| (h) KILĀSA, Ci. 7, 173 | Fresh leprous lesions |
| (i) KĪTIMA, Ci. 7, 22 | Hard, rough and discoloured dermatosis |
| (j) MAṆḌALA, Ci. 7, 16 | Urticarial dermatosis |
| (k) PĀMĀ, Ci. 7, 25 | Mild leprosy |
| (l) PUṆḌARĪKA, Ci. 7, 18 | Ulcerated dermatosis |
| (m) RṢYAJIHVAKA, Ci. 7, 18 | Suppurated dermatosis |
| (n) ŚĀTARU, Ci. 7, 26 | Leprous sores; gangrene |
| (o) SIDHMA, Ci. 7, 19 | Psoriasis |
| (p) ŚVITRA, Ci. 7, 173 | Patchy dermatosis |
| (q) UDUMBARA, Ci. 7, 15 | Acute, non-healing sores |
| (r) VICARCIKĀ, Ci. 7, 26 | Scabies |
| (s) VIPĀDIKĀ, Ci. 7, 22 | Dermatosis with fissures in the extremities |
| (t) VIṢPHOṬAKA, Ci. 7, 25 | Boils |
| 70. LALĀTABHEDA, Sz. 20, 11 | Frontal headache |
| 71. LINGAPĀKA, Ci. 30, 168 | Suppuration and sores of the penis |
| 72. MADĀTYAYA, Ci. chapter 24 (Six types described according to symptoms) | Chronic alcoholism |
| 73. MADHUMEHA, Ni. 4, 44; Ci. 6, 55-56 | Diabetes (described as incurable) |
| 74. MĀMSAKLEDA, Sz. 20, 14 | Softening and degeneration of muscular tissues |
| 75. MANOVIKĀRA, Sz. 7, 52 | Psychic disorders |
| 76. MASŪRIKĀ, Ci. 12, 93 | Pox |
| 77. MEDHRAPĀKA, Sz. 20, 14 | Urethritis |
| 78. MRĪTAGARBHA, Śā. 8, 30 | Chronic abortion |
| 79. MŪKATVA, Sz. 20, 11 | Dumbness |
| 80. MUKHAROGA, Ci. 26, 119 | Oral diseases |
| 81. MŪRCCHĀ, Sz. 24, 35 (Five types described according to etiology) | Fainting fits |
| 82. MŪTRAJĀTHARA, Śi. 9, 30 | Retention of urine causing distension of the lower abdomen |

TABLE 13
Diseases (contd.)

| Name and reference | Modern name |
|--|---|
| 83. MŪTRAKṚCCHRA, <i>Ci. 26, 32</i> (Eight types described according to etiology) | Dysuria |
| 84. MŪTRAKṢAYA, <i>Si. 9, 34</i> | Uræmia |
| 85. MŪTRĀTĪTA, <i>Si. 9, 35</i> | Chronic difficulty and delay in micturition |
| 86. MŪTROTSANĠA, <i>Si. 9, 34</i> | Blood discharge with urine |
| 87. NĀḌĪVRAṆA, <i>Ci. 25, 56</i> | Sinus of fistula |
| 88. NĀḌĪROGA, <i>Sū. 8, 45</i> (Four types named, but not described) | Diseases of new-born babies |
| 89. NĀSĀROGA, <i>Ci. chapetr 26</i> | Diseases of the nasal passage |
| (a) DUṢṬAPRATISĀYA, <i>Ci. 26, 110</i> | Pernicious rhinitis |
| (b) GHRĀṆAPĀKA, <i>Ci. 26, 115</i> | Anosmia |
| (c) NĀSĀRŚAS, <i>Ci. 14, 6</i> | Polypus in nose |
| (d) NĀSĀRBUDA, <i>Ci. 26, 116</i> | Tumour in nose |
| (e) NĀSĀSRĀVA, <i>Ci. 26, 112</i> | Catarrh |
| (f) NĀSĀSRŒĠĀṬAKA, <i>Ci. 26, 111</i> | Atrophy of the sense of smell |
| (g) PINĀSA, <i>Ci. 26, 114</i> | Acute rhinitis |
| (h) PRATINĀHA, <i>Ci. 26, 112</i> | Obstruction in the nasal passage |
| (i) PŪYARAKTA, <i>Ci. 26, 116</i> (Also eleven other minor variations) | Suppuration inside nose |
| 90. NĪDRĀDHIKYA, <i>Sū. 20, 17</i> | Hypersomnia |
| 91. OṢA, <i>Sū. 20, 14</i> | Heat-stroke |
| 92. OṢṬHABHEDA, <i>Sū. 20, 11</i> | Hare-lips |
| 93. PĀDABHRAṆŚĀ, <i>Sū. 20, 11</i> | Fallen arch or flat-foot |
| 94. PAKṢAVADHA, <i>Sū. 20, 11</i> | Hemiplagia |
| 95. PĀṆḌUROGA, <i>Ci. 16, 7</i> | Jaundice |
| (a) HALIMAKA, <i>Ci. 16, 132</i> | Jaundice due to anaemia |
| (b) KĀMALĀ, <i>Ci. 16, 34</i> (Three types described according to etiology) | Jaundice due to intestinal disorders |
| (c) KUMBHAKĀMALĀ, <i>Ci. 26, 36</i> | Malignant jaundice |
| 96. PĀṆGULYA, <i>Sū. 20, 11</i> | Deformed foot; club-foot |
| 97. PĀRŚVAVIMARDA, <i>Sū. 20, 11</i> | Painful spasms in chest with breathing difficulty |

TABLE 13
Diseases (contd.)

| Name and reference | Modern name |
|--|---|
| 98. PĪḌAKA, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 82 | Diabetic eruptions |
| (a) ALAḤI, <i>Ci.</i> 17, 88 | Dry gangrene |
| (b) JĀLINI, <i>Ci.</i> 17, 86 | Carbuncle with multiple openings |
| (c) KACCHAPIKĀ, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 85 | Carbuncle with single opening |
| (d) ŚĀRIVAKA, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 84 | Circular ulcers |
| (e) SARṢAPI, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 87 | Large boil, surrounded by small secondary pustules |
| (f) VIDRADHI, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 10 | Abscesses of the inner organs |
| (g) VINATĀ, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 89 | Moist gangrene |
| 99. PLĪHĀROGA, <i>Sū.</i> 19, 4 (Five types described according to etiology) | Splenic diseases |
| 100. PRAMEHA, <i>Ni.</i> 4, 8 (Twenty variations including diabetes, described according to symptoms) | Urinary disorders |
| 101. PŪTIGHRĀṆATĀ, <i>Sū.</i> 14, 11 | Halitosis |
| 102. RĀJAYAKṢMĀ, <i>Ci.</i> 8, 14 | Pulmonary consumption |
| 103. RAKTAGRANTHI, <i>Si.</i> 9, 41 | Tumour in the neck of the bladder |
| 104. RAKTAPITTA, <i>Ci.</i> 4, 11 (Seven types described according to etiology) | Haemothermia |
| 105. RETODOṢA, <i>Ci.</i> 30, 139 (Eight types described according to symptoms) | Seminal disorders |
| 106. ROHIṆĪ, <i>Sū.</i> 18, 34 | Extensive and painful swelling at the base of the tongue |
| 107. ROMĀNTIKĀ, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 92 | Small eruptions spread over the entire skin surface |
| 108. ŚĀLUKA, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 75 | Frightful swelling and inflammation inside throat with stertorous breathing |
| 109. ŚĀṆKHYABHEDA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Migraine |
| 110. SARVĀNGAROGA, <i>Ci.</i> 28, 29 | General paralysis |
| 111. ŚĪROROGA, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 6 (Five types mentioned, but not described) | Diseases of the head |
| 112. ŚĪRAḤSOPHA, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 75 | Erysipelas of the head |
| 113. SĪRĀSTAMBHA, <i>Ci.</i> 25, 29 | Vascular thrombosis |
| 114. ŚLĪPADA, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 98 | Elephantiasis of the leg |
| 115. ŚOṆITAKLEDA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14 | Pernicious anaemia |

TABLE 13
Diseases (contd.)

| Name and reference | Modern name |
|---|--|
| 116. ŚOṢA, <i>Ni.</i> 6, 11 | Wasting diseases |
| 117. ŚOTHA, <i>Ni.</i> 12, 1 | Oedema |
| 118. SROTOROGA, <i>Vi.</i> 5, 8 (Fourteen types named and described according to location) | Diseases of the body fluids and channels |
| 119. SŪRYĀVARTA, <i>Si.</i> 9, 79 | Recurrent neuralgic pain in the head |
| 120. SVARAKṢAYA, <i>Sū.</i> 24, 15 | Aphonia |
| 121. ŚVĀSA, <i>Ci.</i> 17, 46 (Five types described according to symptoms) | Asthma |
| 122. ŚVETAMŪTRAVARCASTVA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 17 | White and flocculent urine |
| 123. TĀLUVIDRADHI, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 77 | Abscess of the palate |
| 124. TAMASU, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Asthenia |
| 125. TAMO'TIDARŚANA, <i>Sū.</i> 24, 15 | Repeated fainting fits |
| 126. TIMIRA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Partial loss of vision |
| 127. TRṢṢṂĀ, <i>Ci.</i> 22, 57 (Five types described according to etiology) | Morbid thirst |
| 128. TVAGAVADĀRAṆA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14 | Scaly skin |
| 129. UDARAROGA, <i>Ci.</i> 13, 9 | Stomach troubles |
| (a) CHIDRODARA, <i>Ci.</i> 13, 42 | Perforation of the stomach or intestinal wall |
| (b) JALODARA, <i>Ci.</i> 13, 45 | Distension of the abdomen due to fluid secretion |
| (c) UDARĀVEṢṬA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Cardiac pain originating in stomach |
| (d) UDĀVARTA, <i>Ci.</i> 26, 6 | Paralysis of the intestines |
| (e) BADDHAGUDODARA, <i>Ci.</i> 13, 39 | Peritonitis |
| 130. UDARDA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 17 | Urticaria |
| 131. UNAPADĀNĀKUṢAṆĪYAKAVIKĀRA, <i>Vi.</i> 3, 4 | Epidemic diseases |
| 132. UNMĀDA, <i>Ci.</i> chapter 9 (Fifteen types described, five according to etiology and the others according to symptoms) | Insanity |
| 133. UPAJHVIKĀ, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 77 | Acute glossitis |
| 134. UPAKUṢĀ, <i>Ci.</i> 12, 78 | Gingivitis |
| 135. ŪRUSĀDA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Atrophy of the thigh muscles |
| 136. ŪRUSTAMBHA, <i>Ci.</i> chapter 27 | Paralysis of the thighs |

TABLE 13
Diseases (contd.)

| Name and reference | Modern name |
|--|--|
| 137. UTSANTRA, Ci. 25, 58 | Displacement of internal organs |
| 138. VĀTABALĀSA, Ci. 29, 11 (Three types named) | Rheumatism of the joints |
| 139. VĀTAṢṬILĀ, Śi. 9, 36 | Hard tumour in the rectal or urinary passage |
| 140. VIDĀLIKĀ, Ci. 12, 76 | Angina or quinsy |
| 141. VIDARIKĀ, Ci. 12, 89 | Bubo in the groins |
| 142. VILOMA, Ci. 25, 118 | Alopecia |
| 143. VISAMAJVARA, Ci. 3, 53 (Six types described according to periodicity) | Recurrent fevers |
| 144. VISARPA, Ci. 21, 29 (Seven types described according to etiology) | Acute spreading suppurations |
| 145. VISŪCIKĀ, Vi. 2, 10 | Choleraic diarrhoea |
| 146. VRADHNA, Ci. 12, 94 (Five types described according to etiology) | Permanent swellings |
| 147. VRAṆA, Ci. chapter 25 (Forty-four types mentioned, but not all described, including <i>nāḍivraṇa</i>) | Wounds; sores |
| 148. VṚṢAṆAKṢEPA, Śi. 20, 11 | Crypto-orchitis |
| 149. *YONI-ROGA, Ci. chapter 30 | Diseases of the reproductive organs |
| (a) ACARAṆĀ, Ci. 30, 18 | Itching growth in the vagina |
| (b) ANTARMUKHĪ, Ci. 30, 29 | Inverted uterus |
| (c) ARAJASKA, Ci. 30, 17 | Scanty menstrual flow or amenorrhoea |
| (d) ATICARAṆĀ, Ci. 30, 19 | Chronic vaginitis |
| (e) KARṆINI, Ci. 30, 27 | Inflammation of the cervix |
| (f) MAHĀYONI, Ci. 30, 35 | Prolapsed uterus |
| (g) PARIPLUTA, Ci. 30, 23 | Acute vaginitis |
| (h) PRADARA, Ci. 30, 205 (Four types described according to etiology and symptoms) | Menstrual disorders |
| (i) PRĀKCARAṆĀ, Ci. 30, 20 | Deflorative vaginitis |
| (j) PUTRAGHNI, Ci. 30, 28 | Chronic abortion |
| (k) RAKTAYONI, Ci. 30, 16 | Menorrhagia |

* This term in *Caraka* also includes seminal disorders and impotency in the male, as also diseases of lactation. But these have been mentioned in the present list in their proper order.

TABLE 13
Diseases (contd.)

| Name and reference | Modern name |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (l) UDĀVARTINĪ, Ci. 30, 25 | Dysmenorrhoea |
| (m) UPAPLUTA, Ci. 30, 21 | Leucorrhoea |
| (n) VĀMINĪ, Ci. 30, 32 | Flow of old deposited semen |

TABLE 14
Pathological Conditions and Congenital Defects

| Name and reference | Modern name |
|--|---|
| 1. ABHIGHĀTA, <i>Sū. 9, 6</i> (Three types mentioned) | Accidental injuries |
| 2. AJĪRṆA, <i>Ci. 15, 42</i> | Indigestion |
| 3. AKṢĪŚŪLA, <i>Sū. 20, 11</i> | Eye-ache |
| 4. ĀLĀLAMEHA, <i>Ni. 4, 10</i> | Discharge of pus with urine |
| 5. ĀLASYA, <i>Sū. 20, 17</i> | Lassitude |
| 6. ĀMAPITTA, <i>Ci. 22, 15</i> | Biliousness |
| 7. AMLAKA, <i>Sū. 20, 14</i> | Hyperacidity of stomach |
| 8. AṂSADĀHA, <i>Sū. 20, 14</i> | Local burning sensation |
| 9. AṄGAGANDHA, <i>Sū. 20, 14</i> | Body odour |
| 10. AṄGĀVADĀRAṆA, <i>Sū. 20, 14</i> | Local fissures on the surface of the body |
| 11. ANTARDĀHA, <i>Sū. 20, 14</i> | Burning sensation |
| 12. APATANAKA, <i>Si. 9, 15</i> | Fainting and groaning |
| 13. ARUGI, <i>Ci. 8, 60</i> | Distaste for food |
| 14. ASTHIBHAṄGA, <i>Ci. 25, 68</i> | Fractures |
| 15. ATIDAUṚBALYA, <i>Sū. 24, 13</i> | Prostration |
| 16. ATIKṚŚĀ, <i>Sū. 20, 10</i> | Extreme emaciation |
| 17. ATISVEDA, <i>Sū. 20, 14</i> | Excessive sweating |
| 18. ATRṢṬI, <i>Sū. 20, 14</i> | Morbid hunger |
| 19. CHARDI, <i>Ci. 20, 4</i> (Five different types described according to etiology) | Nausea; vomiting |
| 20. CHINNAŚVĀSA, <i>Ci. 17, 54</i> | Interrupted breathing |
| 21. DAVATHU, <i>Sū. 20, 14</i> | Acid eructation |
| 22. DĀHA, <i>Sū. 20, 14</i> | Burn |
| 23. DAṆḌAKA, <i>Sū. 20, 11</i> | Convulsion |
| 24. DHŪMODGĀRA, <i>Sū. 20, 14</i> | Gaseous eructation |
| 25. DURMANAS, <i>Sū. 17, 73</i> | Neurasthenia |
| 26. DUṢṬA, <i>Ci. 25, 29</i> | Suppurated condition |
| 27. DVIRETAS, <i>Śā. 2, 17</i> | Hermaphrodite condition |
| 28. GAṆḌAMĀLĀ, <i>Ci. 12, 79</i> | Chain of tumours around the neck |

TABLE 14
Pathological Conditions and Congenital Defects (contd.)

| Name and reference | Modern name |
|---|---|
| 29. GRĪVĀSTAMBHA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Rigidity of the neck muscles |
| 30. GUDĀRTISYA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Rectal proctalgia |
| 31. GULPHAGRAHA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Sprained ankle |
| 32. HANUBHEDA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Dislocated jaws |
| 33. HARITATVA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14 | Sallow skin |
| 34. HIKKĀ, <i>Ci.</i> 17, 21 (Five types described according to symptoms) | Hiccup |
| 35. HRDAYOPALEPA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 17 | Excessive secretion of phlegm |
| 36. JĪVADĀNA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14 | Haemorrhage |
| 37. JVARA, <i>Ci.</i> chapter 3 (Eight types described according to etiology) | Rise of body temperature |
| 38. KAMPA, <i>Sū.</i> 24, 15 | Tremor |
| 39. KANṬHALEPA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 17 | Excessive secretion of mucus in throat |
| 40. KARṆAKANḌU, <i>Ci.</i> 26, 128 | Itching inside ears |
| 41. KARṆANĀDA, <i>Ci.</i> 26, 128 | Buzzing sound inside ears |
| 42. KARṆAŚŪLA, <i>Ci.</i> 26, 127 | Ear-ache |
| 43. KARṆAVIDĀHA, <i>Ci.</i> 26, 128 | Burning sensation inside ears |
| 44. KAṢĀYĀSYATĀ, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Astringent taste in the mouth |
| 45. KHALLI, <i>Ci.</i> 28, 57 | Neuralgic pain in the lower limbs and shoulders |
| 46. KHAṆJATVA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Lameness |
| 47. KIKKĪSA, <i>Śā.</i> 8, 32 | Burning sensation of the vulva and cracking of local skin |
| 48. LAVANĀSYATĀ, <i>Sū.</i> 24, 14 | Saline taste in the mouth |
| 49. LOHITA-GANDHĀSYATĀ, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14 | Metallic taste in the mouth |
| 50. MADA, <i>Sū.</i> 24, 27 (Seven types described according to symptoms or intoxicating agents) | Intoxication |
| 51. MALĀDHIKYA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 17 | Excessive secretion of faecal matter |
| 52. MĀMSADĀHA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14 | Burning sensation in the muscles |
| 53. MUKHAMĀDHURYA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 17 | Persistent sweet taste in the mouth |
| 54. MUKHAŚOṢA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Dryness of the palate and tongue |
| 55. MUKHASRĀVA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 17 | Excessive salivation |

TABLE 14
Pathological Conditions and Congenital Defects (contd.)

| Name and reference | Modern name |
|---|------------------------------------|
| 56. MŪTRAUKASĀDA, <i>Sū. 9, 28</i> | Dense, turbid and coloured urine |
| 57. PĀDAŚŪLA, <i>Sū. 20, 11</i> | Pain in the foot |
| 58. PĀDASUPTATĀ, <i>Sū. 20, 11</i> | Muscular cramps in the leg |
| 59. PICCHANA, <i>Sū. 17, 4</i> | Contusion |
| 60. PLOṢA, <i>Sū. 20, 14</i> | Scorching of the skin |
| 61. PRAMĪLAKA, <i>Sū. 24, 12</i> | Torpor of the body |
| 62. PRṢTHAGRAHA, <i>Sū. 20, 11</i> | Stiffness of the back |
| 63. PŪTIMUKHATĀ, <i>Sū. 20, 14</i> | Foetid smell from the mouth |
| 64. PŪTYĀSYATĀ, <i>Sū. 24, 11</i> | Putrid taste in the mouth |
| 65. RAJONĀŚA, <i>Sū. 20, 11</i> | Suppressed menstrual flow |
| 66. ŚANAIRMEHA, <i>Ni. 4, 10</i> | Excessively slow micturition |
| 67. ŚANDHĪ or ŚANDHAYONI, <i>Ci. 30, 34</i> | Gynandroid condition in the female |
| 68. SĀNDRAMEHA, <i>Ni. 4, 10</i> | Viscous urine |
| 69. SĀNDRAPRASĀDAMEHA, <i>Ni. 4, 10</i> | Sedimented urine |
| 70. ŚEPHASTAMBHA, <i>Sū. 20, 11</i> | Priapism |
| 71. SIKATĀMEHA, <i>Ni. 4, 10</i> | Gravel particles in urine |
| 72. ŚIRORUK, <i>Sū. 20, 11</i> | Headache |
| 73. ŚOṢA, <i>Ni. 6, 11</i> | Atrophied condition |
| 74. ŚOTHA, <i>Ni. 12, 1</i> | Oedema |
| 75. SŪCĪMUKHA, <i>Ci. 30, 31</i> | Constriction of the cervix |
| 76. ŚUKRAMEHA, <i>Ni. 4, 10</i> | Passing of semen with urine |
| 77. STAMBHA, <i>Ci. 28, 20</i> | Spastic condition |
| 78. SUPTI, <i>Ci. 27, 16</i> | Cramps or temporary paralysis |
| 79. ŚVAYATHU, <i>Ci. 12, 12</i> (Six types described according to etiology.) | Swellings |
| 80. ŚVETABHĀSYATĀ, <i>Sū. 20, 17</i> | Pallor of the skin |
| 81. TAMAḤPRAVEŚA, <i>Sū. 20, 14</i> | Total unconsciousness |
| 82. TANDRĀTIYOGA, <i>Sū. 24, 15</i> | Extreme drowsiness |
| 83. TIKTĀMLODGIRĀṆA, <i>Sū. 24, 14</i> | Bitter and acid eructation |
| 84. TIKTĀSYATĀ, <i>Sū. 20, 11</i> | Bitter taste in the mouth |

TABLE 14
Pathological Conditions and Congenital Defects (contd.)

| Name and reference | Modern name |
|---|--|
| 85. TRIKĀGRAHA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Neuralgic pain in sacral region |
| 86. TVAGDĀHA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14 | Burning sensation of skin |
| 87. UDAKAMEHA, <i>Ni.</i> 4, 10 | Excessive volume of urine |
| 88. UDVṚTTA, <i>Ci.</i> 25, 58 | Swelling |
| 89. UPAVEṢṬAKA, <i>Śā.</i> 8, 26 | Displacement of the foetus |
| 90. UṢMĀDHIKYA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 14 | Very high temperature |
| 91. VĀGBHĀṄGA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Failing speech |
| 92. VĀMANATVA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Dwarfness |
| 93. VARTMASAMKOCA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Retracted eyelids |
| 94. VARTMASTAMBHA, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Rigidity of eyelids |
| 95. VĀTABASTI, <i>Si.</i> 9, 37 | Painful retention of urine |
| 96. VĀTIKAṢAṆḌHA, <i>Śā.</i> 2, 21 | Eunuch condition in males |
| 97. VEPATHU, <i>Sū.</i> 20, 11 | Shivering |
| 98. VIDĀHA, <i>Sū.</i> 10, 95 | Suppurated swelling |
| 99. VIJYUTA, <i>Ci.</i> 25, 70 | Dislocation |
| 100. VIKṢEPA, <i>Ci.</i> 23, 33 | Muscular rigor |
| 101. VIṢA, <i>Ci.</i> chapter 23 | Toxicosis; poisoning |
| (a) ĀMAVIṢA, <i>Ci.</i> 15, 46 | Food poisoning |
| (b) GARAVIṢA or DŪṢIṬIṢA, <i>Ci.</i> 23, 14 | Poisoning from inorganic substances |
| (c) JAṄGAMAVIṢA, <i>Ci.</i> 23, 9 | Poisoning due to bites |
| (d) STHĀVARAVIṢA, <i>Ci.</i> 23, 11 | Poisoning due to vegetable roots and bulbs |
| 102. VIVARṆATĀ, <i>Sū.</i> 24, 13 | Depigmentation of the skin |
| 103. YONIŚOṢA, <i>Ci.</i> 30, 33 | Dryness of the vaginal passage |

TABLE 15
Therapeutical, Surgical, and Chemical Terms

| Name and reference | Modern equivalent |
|---|---|
| Therapeutical & Surgical Terms | |
| 1. AGNIKARMA, <i>Ci. 23</i> , 101 | Cauterization |
| 2. AGNIPARIŚEKA, <i>Ci. 23</i> , 30 | Hot fomentation |
| 3. AVAPĪḌANA, <i>Vi. 6</i> , 16 | Massage |
| 4. BHEDANA, <i>Sū. 11</i> , 55 | Surgical incision |
| 5. CHEDANA, <i>Sū. 11</i> , 55 | Surgical excision |
| 6. DĀRAṆA, <i>Sū. 11</i> , 55 | Surgical rupturing |
| 7. DHŪMAVARTI, <i>Sū. 5</i> , 106 | Medicinal cigar |
| 8. EṢANA, <i>Sū. 11</i> , 55 | Surgical probing |
| 9. KALPANA, <i>Śū. 8</i> , 44 | Use of scalpel to cut through tissues |
| 10. KAVĀLIKĀ-BANDHA, <i>Ci. 23</i> , 69 | Cloth bandage |
| 11. MṚTASANJĪVANA, <i>Ci. 23</i> , 36 | Reanimation |
| 12. NASYA, <i>Sū. 1</i> , 86 | Medication by nasal application |
| 13. PHALAVARTI, <i>Sū. 1</i> , 19 | Suppository |
| 14. PICŪ, <i>Śū. 8</i> , 19 | Swab |
| 15. PRACCHANNA, <i>Sū. 11</i> , 55 | Surgical grafting |
| 16. PRADEHA, <i>Sū. 3</i> , 13 | Ointment or balm |
| 17. PRATIVIṢA, <i>Ci. 23</i> , 34 | Counter poison or counter-irritant |
| 18. RAKTAMOKṢANA, <i>Ci. 23</i> , 36 | Blood-letting |
| 19. RĀŚI, <i>Ni. 5</i> , 22 | Medicinal dose |
| 20. SAṂJÑĀSAMSTHĀPANA, <i>Ci. 23</i> , 36 | Resuscitation |
| 21. ŚASTRAKARMAN, <i>Sū. 1</i> , 86 | Surgical operation |
| 22. ŚASTRAPRAṆIDĀNA, <i>Sū. 11</i> , 55 | Treatment by surgical methods |
| 23. SĪVANA, <i>Sū. 11</i> , 55 | Surgical suturing |
| 24. UDVEṢṬANA, <i>Vi. 6</i> , 16 | Bandaging |
| 25. UPACĀRA, <i>Sū. 9</i> , 8 | Nursing |
| 26. UPADHĀNA, <i>Ci. 23</i> , 36 | Scalp-incision |
| 27. UPANĀHA, <i>Sū. 1</i> , 96 | Poultice |
| 28. UTKṚTA, <i>Ci. 23</i> , 29 | Inoperable condition of the affected part |
| 29. UTPĀṬANA, <i>Sū. 11</i> , 55 | Surgical removal of an affected part |

TABLE 15
Therapeutical, Surgical, and Chemical Terms (contd.)

| Name and reference | Modern equivalent |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 30. VAMANA, <i>Sū.</i> 7, 15 | Emesis |
| *31. BANDHANA, <i>Sū.</i> 17, 4 | Ligature |
| *32. BASTIKARMA, <i>Sū.</i> 1, 86 | Application of enema |
| 33. VENIKA, <i>Ci.</i> 23, 38 | Tourniquet |
| 34. VINNĀSANA, <i>Vi.</i> 6, 16 | Psychiatric treatment |
| 35. VIRECANA, <i>Sū.</i> 7, 15 | Purging |
| 36. VYĀDHANA, <i>Sū.</i> 11, 55 | Surgical puncturing |
| Chemical Terms | |
| 1. AMLA, <i>Sū.</i> 6, 11 | Acid |
| 2. ATAILA, <i>Ni.</i> 8, 150 | Oils other than vegetable oils |
| 3. DHĀTUMALA, <i>Ci.</i> 16, 74 | Metallic ores or corroded metals |
| 4. KṢĀRA, <i>Sū.</i> 3, 14 | Alkaline substance |
| 5. LAVAṆA, <i>Ci.</i> 10, 44 | Salt |
| 6. LOHA, <i>Ci.</i> 25, 103 | Metal |
| 7. RĀGA, <i>Ci.</i> 26, 28 | Dye |
| 8. SNEHA, <i>Sū.</i> 13, 4 | Oil or fat |
| 9. TAILA, <i>Ni.</i> 8, 150 | Vegetable oil |

* Nos. 31 and 32 have not been placed in their proper alphabetical order through mistake.

TABLE 16
Apparatus and Appliances
 (Surgical and Physicochemical)

| Name and reference | Modern name |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 1. ARDHADHARA. Śā. 8, 44 | Scalpel or knife with handle |
| 2. ĀCAMANĪYA. Sū. 15, 7 | Spoon of a special shape |
| 3. BHĀṆḌA. Sū. 15, 7 | Beaker or vessel |
| 4. BHRṆGĀRA. Sū. 15, 7 | Kettle of a special shape |
| 5. CAKRA. Sū. 9, 13 | Wheel |
| 6. DARVĪ. Sū. 15, 7 | Saucer or basin |
| 7. DHŪMA-NETRA. Sū. 15, 7 | Flue |
| 8. DRṢADA. Vi. 7, 22 | Stone slab for grinding |
| 9. KALASA. Vi. 7, 22 | Pitcher |
| 10. KATĀ. Sū. 15, 7 | Saucer with handle |
| 11. KUMBHA. Vi. 7, 22 | Wide-mouth jar |
| 12. KUŚIKA-BANDHA. Ci. 25, 69 | Splint |
| 13. MĀNABHĀṆḌA. Sū. 15, 7 | Vessel for measuring volumes |
| 14. MAṆIKA. Sū. 15, 7 | Shallow basin |
| 15. MANTHANA. Sū. 15, 7 | Stirrer or stirring rod |
| 16. PITARA. Sū. 15, 7 | Pan with handle |
| 17. PRANĀḌĪ. Sū. 14, 44 | Tube for insertion into any bodily orifice |
| 18. PUṢPANETRA. Si. 9, 5 | Urethral catheter |
| 19. ŚALAKA. Si. 9, 50 | Metallic probe for surgery |
| 20. ŚĀLYA. Ci. 13, 184 | Surgical instruments |
| 21. SĀPIDHANA. Sū. 14, 46 | Oven with lid |
| 22. SARAVA. Sū. 15, 7 | Elongated bowl |
| 23. TULĀ. Sū. 15, 7 | Weighing balance |
| 24. UDAṆCANA. Sū. 15, 7 | Covers for vessels |
| 25. UDKOṢṬHA. Sū. 15, 7 | Ladle |
| 26. UDUKHALA. Ni. 7, 22 | Mortar |
| 27. UTTARA-BASTIKA. Sū. 15, 7 | Douche-can |
| 28. YANTRA. Sū. 5, 86 | Mechanical appliance |

TABLE 17
Terms for Physicochemical Processes

| Name and reference | Modern equivalent |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. ANTARDHŪMA. <i>Ci.</i> 15, 174 | Combustion in closed vessel (internal combustion) |
| 2. AVASIṆCANA. <i>Vi.</i> 7, 25 | Moistening |
| 3. AVISAMPLAVANA. <i>Śā.</i> 6, 23 | Flushing in a current of liquid |
| 4. BHĀVANA. <i>Vi.</i> 7, 16 | Impregnating with liquid |
| 5. BHRṢṬA. <i>Sū.</i> 4, 15 | Roasting |
| 6. DĀHANA. <i>Ci.</i> 15, 17 | Combustion |
| 7. DRAVA. <i>Śā.</i> 8, 41 | Solution |
| 8. GATARASA. <i>Vi.</i> 7, 17 | Evaporated residue |
| 9. JARJARĪKARAṆA. <i>Ci.</i> 26, 244 | Trituration |
| 10. JUṢA. <i>Ni.</i> 8, 136 | Liquid extract |
| 11. JVALANA. <i>Sū.</i> 12, 8/3 | Ignition |
| 12. KALKA. <i>Sū.</i> 4, 7 | Paste |
| 13. KHEṬABHŪTA. <i>Śā.</i> 4, 9 | Coagulated |
| 14. KHINNA. <i>Sū.</i> 27, 254 | Boiled |
| 15. LEHA. <i>Vi.</i> 8, 136 | Tincture |
| 16. MANTHANA. <i>Vi.</i> 5, 22 | Churning |
| 17. MRDUPĀKA. <i>Sū.</i> 27, 275 | Mild heating |
| 18. NIṢKĀTHANA. <i>Ci.</i> 15, 174 | Evaporation to dryness |
| 19. PARIPŪYANA. <i>Vi.</i> 7, 26 | Straining solids from solid-liquid mixtures |
| 20. PĀTANA. <i>Ci.</i> 26, 59 | Distillation; precipitation |
| 21. PHĀṆṬA. <i>Sū.</i> 4, 7 | Infusion |
| 22. PHENA. <i>Vi.</i> 7, 23 | Foam or froth |
| 23. PHENAMĀLĀ. <i>Ci.</i> 23, 110 | Effervescence |
| 24. PIṢṬASVEDANA. <i>Ci.</i> 1/1, 58 | Steaming of solids |
| 25. PRASĀDA. <i>Ci.</i> 4, 80 | Clear supernatant liquid |
| 26. SĀDHANA. <i>Vi.</i> 8, 140 | Boiling |
| 27. SAMYOGA. <i>Ni.</i> 5, 22 | Chemical combination |
| 28. SĀNDRA. <i>Śā.</i> 6, 16 | Viscous |
| 29. ŚAUCĀ. <i>Vi.</i> 5, 22 | Clarification of turbid liquid |

TABLE 17
Terms for Physicochemical Processes (contd.)

| Name and reference | Modern equivalent |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 30. SIŃCANA. Śz. 8, 19 | Addition of water |
| 31. ŚITĪBHŪTA. Vi. 7, 26 | Cooled |
| 32. ŚOŚAṆA. Vi. 7, 22 | Desiccation |
| 33. SRĪTA. Śz. 4, 7 | Macerated with liquid |
| 34. SRUTA. Ci. 15, 172 | Percolated with water |
| 35. SUKṢMACŪRṆA. Vi. 7, 22 | Impalpable powder |
| 36. SUPŪTA. Ci. 1/3, 3 | Filtered liquid |
| 37. TAILAPRAPĪḌANA. Vi. 7, 25 | Extraction of oily matter |
| 38. UDGHRTYA. Śz. 8, 41 | Suspension of solids in liquids |
| 39. UPAHITA. Vi. 8, 140 | Intimately mixed |
| 40. UPASAMSKARṆA. Vi. 8, 140 | Filtration |
| 41. UPASOŚAṆA. Śz. 12, 8/3 | Evaporation |
| 42. UPASVEDANA. Ci. 1/2, 14 | A special process of distillation |
| 43. VIGATASNEHA. Vi. 7, 22 | Extracted from fatty or oily matter |
| 44. VIRŪKṢAṆA. Śz. 5, 4 | Dehydration |

TABLE 18
Mechanical and Physical Terms

| Name and reference | Modern equivalent |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. ĀKUNĀNA. <i>Śā.</i> 7, 16 | Contraction |
| 2. AVAGĀHANA. <i>Vi.</i> 6, 16 | Immersion |
| 3. AVAGHAṬṬANA. <i>Vi.</i> 7, 17 | Vigorous stirring |
| 4. AVALEPANA. <i>Vi.</i> 7, 23 | Surface coating |
| 5. CUṢANA. <i>Ci.</i> 23, 26 | Suction |
| 6. DHĀRAṆA. <i>Śā.</i> 7, 16 | Retention |
| 7. EKĀVARTA. <i>Ci.</i> 23, 109 | Spiral |
| 8. GAMANA. <i>Śā.</i> 7, 16 | Motion |
| 9. GRAHANA. <i>Ni.</i> 5, 22 | Measurement |
| 10. KṢODANA. <i>Vi.</i> 7, 22 | Pulverization |
| 11. MĀRGA. <i>Śā.</i> 6, 4 | Trajectory or orbit |
| 12. PARICCHĀYĀ. <i>In.</i> 7, 9 | Penumbra; aura |
| 13. PARINĀHA. <i>Si.</i> 3, 7 | Circumference |
| 14. PARYANTA. <i>Vi.</i> 8, 117 | Distance between extreme points |
| 15. PRAPĪḌANA. <i>Vi.</i> 7, 25 | Rubbing |
| 16. PRASĀRAṆA. <i>Śā.</i> 7, 16 | Expansion |
| 17. PRASTARANA. <i>Vi.</i> 7, 22 | Spreading in layer |
| 18. PRERAṆA. <i>Śā.</i> 7, 16 | Impulse |
| 19. SANTĀNAGATI. <i>Śā.</i> 12, 8/3 | Continuous motion |
| 20. SUṢIRA. <i>Śā.</i> 12, 7 | Porous |
| 21. TATTVA. <i>Śā.</i> 1, 55 | Reflected image |
| 22. TRIDAṆḌA. <i>Śā.</i> 1, 46 | Tripod |
| 23. UNMARDANA. <i>Ni.</i> 6, 16 | Abrasion |
| 24. UPĀṆGA. <i>Śā.</i> 5, 86 | Lubrication |
| 25. VYĀMA. <i>Śā.</i> 14, 43 | Unit of length |

TABLE 19
Weights and Measures
(Ka. 12, 87-97)

| | |
|--|--|
| The smallest unit of weight is that of a <i>Dhamsi</i> (minute particle) | |
| 6 DHĀMSIS | .. 1 MARICI |
| 6 MARICIS | .. 1 SARŚAPA (Mustard-seed) |
| 8 SARŚAPAS | .. 1 TAṆḌULA |
| 2 TAṆḌULAS | .. 1 DHĀNYAMAŚA |
| 2 DHĀNYAMĀŚAS | .. 1 YAVA |
| 4 DHĀNYAMĀŚAS | .. 1 AṆḌIKA |
| 4 AṆḌIKAS | .. 1 MĀŚAKA or DHĀNYAKA |
| 3 MĀŚAKAS | .. 1 ŚAṆA |
| 2 ŚAṆAS | .. 1 DANKŚANA or KOLĀ or VADARA |
| 2 DANKŚANAS | .. 1 KARŚA or SVARNA or AKŚA or PICŪ or VIDĀLAPĀDAKA or PĀNITALA or TIṆ- DUKA or KAVĀLAGRAHA |
| 2 KARŚAS | .. 1 ŚUKTI or AṢṬAMIKA |
| 4 KARŚAS | .. 1 PALA or MUṢṬI or PRĀKUṆCANA or CATURTHIKA or ŚOḌAŚIKA or ĀMRA |
| 2 PALAS | .. 1 PRASṚTA or AṢṬAMANA |
| 4 PALAS | .. 1 AṆJALI or KUḌAVA |
| 4 KUḌAVAS | .. 1 PRĀSTHA |
| 4 PRĀSTHAS | .. 1 ĀḌAKA or PATRA |
| 8 PRĀSTHAS | .. 1 KĀMSA |
| 4 KĀMSAS | .. 1 DRONA or CARMANA or NALVANA or KĀLĀSA or GHATA or UNMANA |
| 2 DRONAS | .. 1 ŚURPA or KUMBHA |
| 2 ŚURPAS | .. 1 GOṆI or KHĀRI or BHĀRA |
| 32 ŚURPAS | .. 1 VĀHA |
| Also 100 PALAS | .. 1 TULĀ |

Later commentators have equated the *Karṣa* to 2 modern *Tolās*. This makes the *Tulā* equal to 9.33 kilograms.

TABLE 20
Terms for Physical Properties
 (Sū. 25, 36; 26, 11)

| Name | Modern equivalent |
|-------------|-------------------|
| 1. DRAVA | Liquid; melt |
| 2. GURU | Heavy |
| 3. KATHINA | Hard; solid |
| 4. KHARA | Rough |
| 5. LAGHU | Light |
| 6. MANDA | Mild, weak |
| 7. MRDU | Soft |
| 8. PICCHILA | Slippery |
| 9. RŪKṢA | Dry |
| 10. SĀNDRA | Viscid |
| 11. SARA | Mobile, fluid |
| 12. ŚĪTA | Cold |
| 13. ŚLAKṢṢA | Smooth, polished |
| 14. SNIGDHA | Oily |
| 15. STHIRA | Firm |
| 16. STHŪLA | Stout |
| 17. SŪKṢMA | Fine |
| 18. TĪKṢṢA | Sharp |
| 19. UṢṢA | Hot |
| 20. VIŚADA | Scattering |

XIII. BIBLIOGRAPHY

MANUSCRIPTS—*Caraka Samhitā*

1. India Office Library (London), MS. No. 338
2. University Library (Tübingen, Germany), MSS. Nos. 458, 459
3. Government of India Oriental MSS. Library (Madras), MS. No. 447
4. Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute (Poona), MSS. Nos. 64, 67
5. Sanskrit College Library (Calcutta), MSS. Nos. 20, 23, 27
6. Benaras Sanskrit College Library (Benaras), MS. No. 41
7. Palace Library (Alwar), MS. No. 1624
8. Jammu Library (Kashmir), MS. No. 3266
9. Palace Library (Jamnagar)
10. Deccan College Library (Poona), MSS. Nos. 368, 925
11. Punjab University Library (Lahore)
12. Elphinstone College Library (Bombay)

PRINTED EDITIONS—*Caraka Samhitā* (TEXT)

1. Edited by Jivānanda Vidyāsāgara, First edition, Calcutta, 1877; Second edition, Calcutta, 1896.
2. Edited by Kavirāja Gaṅgādhara (complete text with commentary)—*Jalpakaḥpataṛu*. Vols. I, II, III. Published by Dharanidhar Roy, Kaviraj. First edition; Berhampore, Bengal, 1878; Second edition, Calcutta, 1880-81.
3. Edited by Harinātha Viśārada (complete text with Cakrapāṇi Datta's commentary); published by Viśharada Ausadhalay; Calcutta, 1892.
4. Edited by Abinash Chandra Kaviratna (incomplete text with Chakrapāṇi Datta's commentary); published by the editor from Jyotish Prakash Jantralaya; Calcutta, 1884-1888.
5. Edited by Jādavaji Trikamji Āchārya (complete text with Chakrapāṇi Datta's commentary); published by Nirnay Sagar Press; Bombay, 1933; Third Edition, Bombay, 1941.
6. Edited by Jyotishchandra Saraswati (text incomplete); published by S. K. Saraswati from Indian Press; Benaras, 1937.
7. Edited by Haridatta Sastri (text of Caraka Samhitā with Cakrapāṇi Datta's *Āyurvedadīpikā* with editor's commentary). Published by Motilal Banarsidas; Lahore, 1940-41.
8. Edited by Shree Gulabkunverba Ayurvedic Society (with introduction, commentary and indices, and with English, Hindi and Guzrati translations). Published by the Society in six volumes. Jamnagar, 1949.

COMMENTARIES ON THE *Caraka Samhitā*

1. *Carakanyāsa* by Bhaṭṭāra Haricandra (6th century A.D.). Mentioned in MS. No. 13092 in the Government Oriental MSS. Library, Madras.
2. *Carakapañjikā* by Ācārya Svāmi Kumāra (6th century A.D.). MS. No. 13091 in Government MSS. Library, Madras; MS. No. R5392 in the Palace Library, Jamnagar.
3. *Nirantarapada* by Jejjata (9th century A.D.). Edited by Haridatta Sastri; printed and published by Motilal Banarsidas; Lahore 1940-41.
4. *Caraka candrikā* by Gayādāsa (10th century A.D.). Mentioned in Dallana's *Nibandhasaṃgraha*.
5. *Āyurvedadīpikā* or *Carakatātparyāṣikā* by Cakradatta (Cakrapāṇi Datta), 11th century A.D.
(i) Edited & published by N. N. Sengupta and B. C. Sengupta; Calcutta, 1849-1855.
(ii) Edited by Harinath Visarada; Calcutta, 1892.
6. *Carakatatvapradīpikā* and *Tatvacandrikā* by Śivādāsa Sena (15th century A.D.). MS. No. 47 in the Palace Library, Jamnagar.
7. *Madhukosa* by Vijayaraksita and Śrikanṭha Datta (circa 17th century A.D.); edited by Jādavaji Trikamji Āchārya. Published by Nirnay Sagar Press, Bombay, 1933.
8. *Carakopaṣkāra* by Jogindra Nath Sen. Published by the author from the Vidyodaya Press, Calcutta, 1920.

TRANSLATIONS

1. Tibetan—date unknown; translator unknown.
2. Persian—earlier than 8th century A. D. This version was retranslated into Arabic by Abdullah-bin-Ali of the 9th century.
3. Arabic—8th or 9th century; translated from original Sanskrit by Ali-ibn-zain; quoted by Al-Biruni.
4. Hindi—by A. S. Sarma, 1903; S. G. Ayurvedic Society, Jamnagar, 1949.
5. English—(incomplete)—by A. C. Kaviratna, 1912.
6. Urdu—by Ayurvedic Pharmacy; Lahore, 1913.
7. Gujrati—by J. D. Dave, 1913; S. G. Ayurvedic Society, Jamnagar, 1949.
8. Bengali—by J. S. Sarkar, 1924.
9. Marathi—by V. P. Krishnasastri, 1926.
10. Telugu—by Vanivilas Pras; Madras, 1935.
11. English (complete)—by S. G. Ayurvedic Society; Jamnagar, 1949.

ERRATA

| | |
|--|----------------------|
| Page vi, line 27 from the top, <i>for</i> Siences, | <i>read</i> Sciences |
| „ 2, „ 19 „ „ „ „ slokas | „ <i>ślokaś</i> |
| „ 27, „ 5 „ „ „ <i>Jivaniya</i> | „ <i>Jivaniya</i> |
| „ 30, „ 4 „ „ „ PRASAH-VARGA | „ PRASAHA-VARGA |
| „ 52, „ 17 „ „ „ (column 4) <i>for</i> ringworms | „ ringworm, |
| „ 88, „ 16 „ „ „ (column 2) „ souredmilk | „ soured milk |

